The Project Gutenberg EBook of The Extermination of the American Bison, by

William T. Hornaday

This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere at no cost and with

almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or

re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg License included

with this eBook or online at www.gutenberg.org

Title: The Extermination of the American Bison

Author: William T. Hornaday

Release Date: February 10, 2006 [EBook #17748]

Language: English

\*\*\* START OF THIS PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK THE EXTERMINATION OF THE \*\*\*

Produced by Chuck Greif, Tony Browne and the Online

Distributed Proofreading Team at http://www.pgdp.net

[Illustration: (Inscription) Mr. Theodore Roosevelt. Author of "Hunting

Trips of a Ranchman," With the compliments of The Author, W.T. Hornaday.]

SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION.

UNITED STATES NATIONAL MUSEUM.

\* \* \* \* \*

THE EXTERMINATION OF THE AMERICAN BISON.

BY

WILLIAM T. HORNADAY,

\_Superintendent of the National Zoological Park.\_

\* \* \* \* \*

From the Report of the National Museum, 1886-'87, pages 369-548, and

plates I-XXII.

\* \* \* \* \*

WASHINGTON

GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE.

1889.

[Illustration: GROUP OF AMERICAN BISONS IN THE NATIONAL MUSEUM.

Collected and mounted by W. T. Hornaday.]

CONTENTS.

PREFATORY NOTE

PART I.--THE LIFE HISTORY OF THE BISON

I. Discovery of the species

II. Geographical distribution

III. Abundance

IV. Character of the species

1. The buffalo's rank amongst ruminants

2. Change of form in captivity

3. Mounted specimens in museums

4. The calf

5. The yearling

6. The spike bull

7. The adult bull

8. The cow in the third year

9. The adult cow

10. The "Wood" or "Mountain Buffalo"

11. The shedding of the winter pelage

V. Habits of the buffalo

VI. The food of the buffalo

VII. Mental capacity and disposition of the buffalo

VIII. Value to mankind

IX. Economic value of the bison to Western

cattle-growers

1. The bison in captivity and domestication

2. Need of an improvement in range cattle

3. Character of the buffalo-domestic hybrid

4. The bison as a beast of burden

5. List of bison herds and individuals

in captivity

PART II.--THE EXTERMINATION

I. Causes of the extermination

II. Methods of slaughter

1. The "still hunt"

2. The chase on horseback

3. Impounding

4. The surround

5. Decoying and driving

6. Hunting on snow-shoes

III. Progress of the extermination

A. The period of desultory destruction

B. The period of systematic slaughter

1. The Red River half-breeds

2. The country of the Sioux

3. Western railways, and their part

in the extermination of the buffalo

4. The division of the universal herd

5. The destruction of the southern herd

6. Statistics of the slaughter

7. The destruction of the northern herd

IV. Legislation to prevent useless slaughter

V. Completeness of the wild buffalo's extirpation

VI. Effects of the disappearance of the bison

VII. Preservation of the species from absolute extinction

PART III.--THE SMITHSONIAN EXPEDITION FOR SPECIMENS

I. The exploration for specimens

II. The hunt

III. The mounted group in the National Museum

INDEX

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

Group of buffaloes in the National Museum

Head of bull buffalo

Slaughter of buffalo on Kansas Pacific Railroad

Buffalo cow, calf, and yearling

Spike bull

Bull buffalo

Bull buffalo, rear view

The development of the buffalo's horns

A dead bull

Buffalo skinners at work

Five minutes' work

Scene on the northern buffalo range

Half-breed calf

Half-breed buffalo (domestic) cow

Young half-breed bull

The still-hunt

The chase on horseback

Cree Indians impounding buffalo

The surround

Indians on snow-shoes hunting buffaloes

Where the millions have gone

Trophies of the hunt

MAPS.

Sketch map of the hunt for buffalo

Map illustrating the extermination of the American bison

PREFATORY NOTE.

It is hoped that the following historical account of the discovery,

partial utilization, and almost complete extermination of the great

American bison may serve to cause the public to fully realize the folly

of allowing all our most valuable and interesting American mammals to be

wantonly destroyed in the same manner. The wild buffalo is practically

gone forever, and in a few more years, when the whitened bones of the

last bleaching skeleton shall have been picked up and shipped East for

commercial uses, nothing will remain of him save his old, well-worn

trails along the water-courses, a few museum specimens, and regret for

his fate. If his untimely end fails even to point a moral that shall

benefit the surviving species of mammals \_which are now being

slaughtered in like manner\_, it will be sad indeed.

Although \_Bison americanus\_ is a true bison, according to scientific

classification, and not a buffalo, the fact that more than sixty

millions of people in this country unite in calling him a "buffalo," and

know him by no other name, renders it quite unnecessary for me to

apologize for following, in part, a harmless custom which has now become

so universal that all the naturalists in the world could not change it

if they would.

W. T. H.

THE EXTERMINATION OF THE AMERICAN BISON,

By WILLIAM T. HORNADAY,

\_Superintendent of the National Zoological Park.\_

PART I.--LIFE HISTORY OF THE BISON.

I. DISCOVERY OF THE SPECIES.

The discovery of the American bison, as first made by Europeans,

occurred in the menagerie of a heathen king.

In the year 1521, when Cortez reached Anahuac, the American bison was

seen for the first time by civilized Europeans, if we may be permitted

to thus characterize the horde of blood thirsty plunder seekers who

fought their way to the Aztec capital. With a degree of enterprise that

marked him as an enlightened monarch, Montezuma maintained, for the

instruction of his people, a well-appointed menagerie, of which the

historian De Solis wrote as follows (1724):

"In the second Square of the same House were the Wild Beasts, which were

either presents to Montezuma, or taken by his Hunters, in strong Cages

of Timber, rang'd in good Order, and under Cover: Lions, Tygers, Bears,

and all others of the savage Kind which New-Spain produced; among which

the greatest Rarity was the Mexican Bull; a wonderful composition of

divers Animals. It has crooked Shoulders, with a Bunch on its Back like

a Camel; its Flanks dry, its Tail large, and its Neck cover'd with Hair

like a Lion. It is cloven footed, its Head armed like that of a Bull,

which it resembles in Fierceness, with no less strength and Agility."

Thus was the first seen buffalo described. The nearest locality from

whence it could have come was the State of Coahuila, in northern Mexico,

between 400 and 500 miles away, and at that time vehicles were unknown

to the Aztecs. But for the destruction of the whole mass of the written

literature of the Aztecs by the priests of the Spanish Conquest, we

might now be reveling in historical accounts of the bison which would

make the oldest of our present records seem of comparatively recent

date.

Nine years after the event referred to above, or in 1530, another

Spanish explorer, Alvar Nuñez Cabeza, afterwards called Cabeza de

Vaca--or, in other words "Cattle Cabeza," the prototype of our own

distinguished "Buffalo Bill"--was wrecked on the Gulf coast, west of

the delta of the Mississippi, from whence he wandered westward through

what is now the State of Texas. In southeastern Texas he discovered the

American bison on his native heath. So far as can be ascertained, this

was the earliest discovery of the bison in a wild state, and the

description of the species as recorded by the explorer is of historical

interest. It is brief and superficial. The unfortunate explorer took

very little interest in animated nature, except as it contributed to the

sum of his daily food, which was then the all-important subject of his

thoughts. He almost starved. This is all he has to say:[1]

[Note 1: Davis' Spanish Conquest of New Mexico. 1869. P. 67.]

"Cattle come as far as this. I have seen them three times, and eaten of

their meat. I think they are about the size of those in Spain. They have

small horns like those of Morocco, and the hair long and flocky, like

that of the merino. Some are light brown (\_pardillas\_) and others black.

To my judgment the flesh is finer and sweeter than that of this country

[Spain]. The Indians make blankets of those that are not full grown, and

of the larger they make shoes and bucklers. They come as far as the

sea-coast of Florida [now Texas], and in a direction from the north, and

range over a district of more than 400 leagues. In the whole extent of

plain over which they roam, the people who live bordering upon it

descend and kill them for food, and thus a great many skins are

scattered throughout the country."

Coronado was the next explorer who penetrated the country of the

buffalo, which he accomplished from the west, by way of Arizona and New

Mexico. He crossed the southern part of the "Pan-handle" of Texas, to

the edge of what is now the Indian Territory, and returned through the

same region. It was in the year 1542 that he reached the buffalo

country, and traversed the plains that were "full of crooke-backed oxen,

as the mountaine Serena in Spaine is of sheepe." This is the description

of the animal as recorded by one of his followers, Castañeda, and

translated by W. W. Davis:[2]

[Note 2: The Spanish Conquest of New Mexico. Davis. 1869. Pp. 206-7.]

"The first time we encountered the buffalo, all the horses took to

flight on seeing them, for they are horrible to the sight.

"They have a broad and short face, eyes two palms from each other, and

projecting in such a manner sideways that they can see a pursuer. Their

beard is like that of goats, and so long that it drags the ground when

they lower the head. They have, on the anterior portion of the body, a

frizzled hair like sheep's wool; it is very fine upon the croup, and

sleek like a lion's mane. Their horns are very short and thick, and can

scarcely be seen through the hair. They always change their hair in May,

and at this season they really resemble lions. To make it drop more

quickly, for they change it as adders do their skins, they roll among

the brush-wood which they find in the ravines.

"Their tail is very short, and terminates in a great tuft. When they run

they carry it in the air like scorpions. When quite young they are

tawny, and resemble our calves; but as age increases they change color

and form.

"Another thing which struck us was that all the old buffaloes that we

killed had the left ear cloven, while it was entire in the young; we

could never discover the reason of this.

"Their wool is so fine that handsome clothes would certainly be made of

it, but it can not be dyed for it is tawny red. We were much surprised

at sometimes meeting innumerable herds of bulls without a single cow,

and other herds of cows without bulls."

Neither De Soto, Ponce de Leon, Vasquez de Ayllon, nor Pamphilo de

Narvaez ever saw a buffalo, for the reason that all their explorations

were made south of what was then the habitat of that animal. At the time

De Soto made his great exploration from Florida northwestward to the

Mississippi and into Arkansas (1539-'41) he did indeed pass through

country in northern Mississippi and Louisiana that was afterward

inhabited by the buffalo, but at that time not one was to be found

there. Some of his soldiers, however, who were sent into the northern

part of Arkansas, reported having seen buffalo skins in the possession

of the Indians, and were told that live buffaloes were to be found 5 or

6 leagues north of their farthest point.

The earliest discovery of the bison in Eastern North America, or indeed

anywhere north of Coronado's route, was made somewhere near Washington,

District of Columbia, in 1612, by an English navigator named Samuel

Argoll,[3] and narrated as follows:

"As soon as I had unladen this corne, I set my men to the felling of

Timber, for the building of a Frigat, which I had left half finished at

Point Comfort, the 19. of March: and returned myself with the ship into

Pembrook [Potomac] River, and so discovered to the head of it, which is

about 65 leagues into the Land, and navigable for any ship. And then

marching into the Countrie, I found great store of Cattle as big as

Kine, of which the Indians that were my guides killed a couple, which we

found to be very good and wholesome meate, and are very easie to be

killed, in regard they are heavy, slow, and not so wild as other beasts

of the wildernesse."

[Note 3: Purchas: His Pilgrimes. (1625.) Vol. IV, p. 1765. "A letter of

Sir Samuel Argoll touching his Voyage to Virginia, and actions there.

Written to Master Nicholas Hawes, June, 1613."]

It is to be regretted that the narrative of the explorer affords no clew

to the precise locality of this interesting discovery, but since it is

doubtful that the mariner journeyed very far on foot from the head of

navigation of the Potomac, it seems highly probable that the first

American bison seen by Europeans, other than the Spaniards, was found

within 15 miles, or even less, of the capital of the United States, and

possibly within the District of Columbia itself.

The first meeting of the white man with the buffalo on the northern

boundary of that animal's habitat occurred in 1679, when Father

Hennepin ascended the St. Lawrence to the great lakes, and finally

penetrated the great wilderness as far as western Illinois.

The next meeting with the buffalo on the Atlantic slope was in October,

1729, by a party of surveyors under Col. William Byrd, who were engaged

in surveying the boundary between North Carolina and Virginia.

As the party journeyed up from the coast, marking the line which now

constitutes the interstate boundary, three buffaloes were seen on

Sugar-Tree Creek, but none of them were killed.

On the return journey, in November, a bull buffalo was killed on

Sugar-Tree Creek, which is in Halifax County, Virginia, within 5 miles

of Big Buffalo Creek; longitude 78° 40' W., and 155 miles from the

coast.[4] "It was found all alone, tho' Buffaloes Seldom are." The meat

is spoken of as "a Rarity," not met at all on the expedition up. The

animal was found in thick woods, which were thus feelingly described:

"The woods were thick great Part of this Day's Journey, so that we were

forced to scuffle hard to advance 7 miles, being equal in fatigue to

double that distance of Clear and Open Ground." One of the creeks which

the party crossed was christened Buffalo Creek, and "so named from the

frequent tokens we discovered of that American Behemoth."

[Note 4: Westover Manuscript. Col. William Byrd. Vol. I, p. 178.]

In October, 1733, on another surveying expedition, Colonel Byrd's party

had the good fortune to kill another buffalo near Sugar-Tree Creek,

which incident is thus described:[5]

[Note 5: Vol. II, pp. 24, 25.]

"We pursued our journey thro' uneven and perplext woods, and in the

thickest of them had the Fortune to knock down a Young Buffalo 2 years

old. Providence threw this vast animal in our way very Seasonably, just

as our provisions began to fail us. And it was the more welcome, too,

because it was change of dyet, which of all Varietys, next to that of

Bed-fellows, is the most agreeable. We had lived upon Venison and Bear

till our stomachs loath'd them almost as much as the Hebrews of old did

their Quails. Our Butchers were so unhandy at their Business that we

grew very lank before we cou'd get our Dinner. But when it came, we

found it equal in goodness to the best Beef. They made it the longer

because they kept Sucking the Water out of the Guts in imitation of the

Catauba Indians, upon the belief that it is a great Cordial, and will

even make them drunk, or at least very Gay."

A little later a solitary bull buffalo was found, \_but spared\_,[6] the

earliest instance of the kind on record, and which had few successors to

keep it company.

[Note 6: \_Ib.\_, p. 28.]

II. GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION.

The range of the American bison extended over about one-third of the

entire continent of North America. Starting almost at tide-water on the

Atlantic coast, it extended westward through a vast tract of dense

forest, across the Alleghany Mountain system to the prairies along the

Mississippi, and southward to the Delta of that great stream. Although

the great plains country of the West was the natural home of the

species, where it flourished most abundantly, it also wandered south

across Texas to the burning plains of northeastern Mexico, westward

across the Rocky Mountains into New Mexico, Utah, and Idaho, and

northward across a vast treeless waste to the bleak and inhospitable

shores of the Great Slave Lake itself. It is more than probable that had

the bison remained unmolested by man and uninfluenced by him, he would

eventually have crossed the Sierra Nevadas and the Coast Range and taken

up his abode in the fertile valleys of the Pacific slope.

Had the bison remained for a few more centuries in undisturbed

possession of his range, and with liberty to roam at will over the North

American continent, it is almost certain that several distinctly

recognizable varieties would have been produced. The buffalo of the hot

regions in the extreme south would have become a short-haired animal

like the gaur of India and the African buffalo. The individuals

inhabiting the extreme north, in the vicinity of Great Slave Lake, for

example, would have developed still longer hair, and taken on more of

the dense hairyness of the musk ox. In the "wood" or "mountain buffalo"

we already have a distinct foreshadowing of the changes which would have

taken place in the individuals which made their permanent residence upon

rugged mountains.

It would be an easy matter to fill a volume with facts relating to the

geographical distribution of \_Bison americanus\_ and the dates of its

occurrence and disappearance in the multitude of different localities

embraced within the immense area it once inhabited. The capricious

shiftings of certain sections of the great herds, whereby large areas

which for many years had been utterly unvisited by buffaloes suddenly

became overrun by them, could be followed up indefinitely, but to little

purpose. In order to avoid wearying the reader with a mass of dates and

references, the map accompanying this paper has been prepared to show at

a glance the approximate dates at which the bison finally disappeared

from the various sections of its habitat. In some cases the date given

is coincident with the death of the last buffalo known to have been

killed in a given State or Territory; in others, where records are

meager, the date given is the nearest approximation, based on existing

records. In the preparation of this map I have drawn liberally from Mr.

J. A. Allen's admirable monograph of "The American Bison," in which the

author has brought together, with great labor and invariable accuracy, a

vast amount of historical data bearing upon this subject. In this

connection I take great pleasure in acknowledging my indebtedness to

Professor Allen's work.

While it is inexpedient to include here all the facts that might be

recorded with reference to the discovery, existence, and ultimate

extinction of the bison in the various portions of its former habitat,

it is yet worth while to sketch briefly the extreme limits of its range.

In doing this, our starting point will be the Atlantic slope east of the

Alleghanies, and the reader will do well to refer to the large map.

DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA.--There is no indisputable evidence that the bison

ever inhabited this precise locality, but it is probable that it did. In

1612 Captain Argoll sailed up the "Pembrook River" to the head of

navigation (Mr. Allen believes this was the James River, and not the

Potomac) and marched inland a few miles, where he discovered buffaloes,

some of which were killed by his Indian guides. If this river was the

Potomac, and most authorities believe that it was, the buffaloes seen by

Captain Argoll might easily have been in what is now the District of

Columbia.

Admitting the existence of a reasonable doubt as to the identity of the

Pembrook River of Captain Argoll, there is yet another bit of history

which fairly establishes the fact that in the early part of the

seventeenth century buffaloes inhabited the banks of the Potomac between

this city and the lower falls. In 1624 an English fur trader named Henry

Fleet came hither to trade with the Anacostian Indians, who then

inhabited the present site of the city of Washington, and with the

tribes of the Upper Potomac. In his journal (discovered a few years

since in the Lambeth Library, London) Fleet gave a quaint description of

the city's site as it then appeared. The following is from the

explorer's journal:

"Monday, the 25th June, we set sail for the town of Tohoga, where we

came to an anchor 2 leagues short of the falls. \* \* \* This place,

without question, is the most pleasant and healthful place in all this

country, and most convenient for habitation, the air temperate in summer

and not violent in winter. It aboundeth with all manner of fish. The

Indians in one night commonly will catch thirty sturgeons in a place

where the river is not above 12 fathoms broad, and as for deer,

buffaloes, bears, turkeys, the woods do swarm with them. \* \* \* The 27th

of June I manned my shallop and went up with the flood, the tide rising

about 4 feet at this place. We had not rowed above 3 miles, but we might

hear the falls to roar about 6 miles distant."[7]

[Note 7: Charles Burr Todd's "Story of Washington," p. 18. New York,

1889.]

MARYLAND.--There is no evidence that the bison ever inhabited Maryland,

except what has already been adduced with reference to the District of

Columbia. If either of the references quoted may be taken as conclusive

proof, and I see no reason for disputing either, then the fact that the

bison once ranged northward from Virginia into Maryland is fairly

established. There is reason to expect that fossil remains of \_Bison

americanus\_ will yet be found both in Maryland and the District of

Columbia, and I venture to predict that this will yet occur.

VIRGINIA.--Of the numerous references to the occurrence of the bison in

Virginia, it is sufficient to allude to Col. William Byrd's meetings

with buffaloes in 1620, while surveying the southern boundary of the

State, about 155 miles from the coast, as already quoted; the references

to the discovery of buffaloes on the eastern side of the Virginia

mountains, quoted by Mr. Allen from Salmon's "Present State of

Virginia," page 14 (London, 1737), and the capture \_and domestication\_

of buffaloes in 1701 by the Huguenot settlers at Manikintown, which was

situated on the James River, about 14 miles above Richmond. Apparently,

buffaloes were more numerous in Virginia than in any other of the

Atlantic States.

NORTH CAROLINA.--Colonel Byrd's discoveries along the interstate

boundary between Virginia and North Carolina fixes the presence of the

bison in the northern part of the latter State at the date of the

survey. The following letter to Prof. G. Brown Goode, dated Birdsnest

post-office, Va., August 6, 1888, from Mr. C. R. Moore, furnishes

reliable evidence of the presence of the buffalo at another point in

North Carolina: "In the winter of 1857 I was staying for the night at

the house of an old gentleman named Houston. I should judge he was

seventy then. He lived near Buffalo Ford, on the Catawba River, about 4

miles from Statesville, N. C. I asked him how the ford got its name. He

told me that his grandfather told him that when he was a boy the buffalo

crossed there, and that when the rocks in the river were bare they would

eat the moss that grew upon them." The point indicated is in longitude

81° west and the date not far from 1750.

SOUTH CAROLINA.--Professor Allen cites numerous authorities, whose

observations furnish abundant evidence of the existence of the buffalo

in South Carolina during the first half of the eighteenth century. From

these it is quite evident that in the northwestern half of the State

buffaloes were once fairly numerous. Keating declares, on the authority

of Colhoun, "and we know that some of those who first settled the

Abbeville district in South Carolina, in 1756, found the buffalo

there."[8] This appears to be the only definite locality in which the

presence of the species was recorded.

[Note 8: Long's Expedition to the Source of the St. Peter's River, 1823,

II, p. 26.]

GEORGIA.--The extreme southeastern limit of the buffalo in the United

States was found on the coast of Georgia, near the mouth of the Altamaha

River, opposite St. Simon's Island. Mr. Francis Moore, in his "Voyage to

Georgia," made in 1736 and reported upon in 1744,[9] makes the following

observation:

[Note 9: Coll. Georgia Hist. Soc., I, p. 117.]

"The island [St. Simon's] abounds with deer and rabbits. There are no

buffalo in it, though there are large herds upon the main." Elsewhere in

the same document (p. 122) reference is made to buffalo-hunting by

Indians on the main-land near Darien.

In James E. Oglethorpe's enumeration (A. D. 1733) of the wild beasts of

Georgia and South Carolina he mentions "deer, elks, bears, wolves, and

buffaloes."[10]

[Note 10: Ibid., I, p. 51.]

Up to the time of Moore's voyage to Georgia the interior was almost

wholly unexplored, and it is almost certain that had not the "large

herds of buffalo on the main-land" existed within a distance of 20 or 30

miles or less from the coast, the colonists would have had no knowledge

of them; nor would the Indians have taken to the war-path against the

whites at Darien "under pretense of hunting buffalo."

ALABAMA.--Having established the existence of the bison in northwestern

Georgia almost as far down as the center of the State, and in

Mississippi down to the neighborhood of the coast, it was naturally

expected that a search of historical records would reveal evidence that

the bison once inhabited the northern half of Alabama. A most careful

search through all the records bearing upon the early history and

exploration of Alabama, to be found in the Library of Congress, failed

to discover the slightest reference to the existence of the species in

that State, or even to the use of buffalo skins by any of the Alabama

Indians. While it is possible that such a hiatus really existed, in this

instance its existence would be wholly unaccountable. I believe that the

buffalo once inhabited the northern half of Alabama, even though history

fails to record it.

LOUISIANA AND MISSISSIPPI.--At the beginning of the eighteenth century,

buffaloes were plentiful in southern Mississippi and Louisiana, not only

down to the coast itself, from Bay St. Louis to Biloxi, but even in the

very Delta of the Mississippi, as the following record shows. In a

"Memoir addressed to Count de Pontchartrain," December 10, 1697, the

author, M. de Remonville, describes the country around the mouth of the

Mississippi, now the State of Louisiana, and further says:[11]

"A great abundance of wild cattle are also found there, which might be

domesticated by rearing up the young calves." Whether these animals were

buffaloes might be considered an open question but for the following

additional information, which affords positive evidence: "The trade in

furs and peltry would be immensely valuable and exceedingly profitable.

We could also draw from thence a great quantity of buffalo hides every

year, as the plains are filled with the animals."

In the same volume, page 47, in a document entitled "Annals of Louisiana

from 1698 to 1722, by M. Penicaut" (1698), the author records the

presence of the buffalo on the Gulf coast on the banks of the Bay St.

Louis, as follows: "The next day we left Pea Island, and passed through

the Little Rigolets, which led into the sea about three leagues from the

Bay of St. Louis. We encamped at the entrance of the bay, near a

fountain of water that flows from the hills, and which was called at

this time Belle Fountain. We hunted during several days upon the coast

of this bay, and filled our boats with the meat of the deer, buffaloes,

and other wild game which we had killed, and carried it to the fort

(Biloxi)."

[Note 11: Hist. Coll. of Louisiana and Florida, B. F. French, 1869,

first series, p. 2.]

The occurrence of the buffalo at Natchez is recorded,[12] and also (p.

115) at the mouth of Red River, as follows: "We ascended the Mississippi

to Pass Manchac, where we killed fifteen buffaloes. The next day we

landed again, and killed eight more buffaloes and as many deer."

[Note 12: Ibid., pp. 88-91.]

The presence of the buffalo in the Delta of the Mississippi was observed

and recorded by D'Iberville in 1699.[13]

[Note 13: Hist. Coll. of Louisiana and Florida, French, second series,

p. 58.]

According to Claiborne,[14] the Choctaws have an interesting tradition

in regard to the disappearance of the buffalo from Mississippi. It

relates that during the early part of the eighteenth century a great

drought occurred, which was particularly severe in the prairie region.

For three years not a drop of rain fell. The Nowubee and Tombigbee

Rivers dried up and the forests perished. The elk and buffalo, which up

to that time had been numerous, all migrated to the country beyond the

Mississippi, and never returned.

[Note 14: Mississippi as a Province, Territory, and State, p. 484.]

TEXAS.--It will be remembered that it was in southeastern Texas, in all

probability within 50 miles of the present city of Houston, that the

earliest discovery of the American bison on its native heath was made in

1530 by Cabeza de Vaca, a half-starved, half-naked, and wholly wretched

Spaniard, almost the only surviving member of the celebrated expedition

which burned its ships behind it. In speaking of the buffalo in Texas at

the earliest periods of which we have any historical record, Professor

Allen says: "They were also found in immense herds on the coast of

Texas, at the Bay of St. Bernard (Matagorda Bay), and on the lower part

of the Colorado (Rio Grande, according to some authorities), by La

Salle, in 1685, and thence northwards across the Colorado, Brazos, and

Trinity Rivers." Joutel says that when in latitude 28° 51' "the sight

of abundance of goats and bullocks, differing in shape from ours, and

running along the coast, heightened our earnestness to be ashore." They

afterwards landed in St. Louis Bay (now called Matagorda Bay), where

they found buffaloes in such numbers on the Colorado River that they

called it La Rivière aux Boeufs.[15] According to Professor Allen, the

buffalo did not inhabit the coast of Texas east of the mouth of the

Brazos River.

[Note 15: The American Bisons, Living and Extinct, p. 132.]

It is a curious coincidence that the State of Texas, wherein the

earliest discoveries and observations upon the bison were made, should

also now furnish a temporary shelter for one of the last remnants of the

great herd.

MEXICO.--In regard to the existence of the bison south of the Rio

Grande, in old Mexico, there appears to be but one authority on record,

Dr. Berlandier, who at the time of his death left in MS. a work on the

mammals of Mexico. At one time this MS. was in the Smithsonian

Institution, but it is there no longer, nor is its fate even

ascertainable. It is probable that it was burned in the fire that

destroyed a portion of the Institution in 1865. Fortunately Professor

Allen obtained and published in his monograph (in French) a copy of that

portion of Dr. Berlandier's work relating to the presence of the bison

in Mexico,[16] of which the following is a translation:

[Note 16: The American Bisons, pp. 129-130.]

"In Mexico, when the Spaniards, ever greedy for riches, pushed their

explorations to the north and northeast, it was not long before they met

with the buffalo. In 1602 the Franciscan monks who discovered Nuevo Leon

encountered in the neighborhood of Monterey numerous herds of these

quadrupeds. They were also distributed in Nouvelle Biscaye (States of

Chihuahua and Durango), and they sometimes advanced to the extreme south

of that country. In the eighteenth century they concentrated more and

more toward the north, but still remained very abundant in the

neighborhood of the province of Bexar. At the commencement of the

nineteenth century we see them recede gradually in the interior of the

country to such an extent that they became day by day scarcer and

scarcer about the settlements. Now, it is not in their periodical

migrations that we meet them near Bexar. Every year in the spring, in

April or May, they advance toward the north, to return again to the

southern regions in September and October. The exact limits of these

annual migrations are unknown; it is, however, probable that in the

north they never go beyond the banks of the Rio Bravo, at least in the

States of Cohahuila and Texas. Toward the north, not being checked by

the currents of the Missouri, they progress even as far as Michigan, and

they are found in summer in the Territories and interior States of the

United States of North America. The route which these animals follow in

their migrations occupies a width of several miles, and becomes so

marked that, besides the verdure destroyed, one would believe that the

fields had been covered with manure.

"These migrations are not general, for certain bands do not seem to

follow the general mass of their kin, but remain stationary throughout

the whole year on the prairies covered with a rich vegetation on the

banks of the Rio de Guadelupe and the Rio Colorado of Texas, not far

from the shores of the Gulf, to the east of the colony of San Felipe,

precisely at the same spot where La Salle and his traveling companions

saw them two hundred years before. The Rev. Father Damian Mansanet saw

them also as in our days on the shores of Texas, in regions which have

since been covered with the habitations, hamlets, and villages of the

new colonists, and from whence they have disappeared since 1828."

[Illustration: HEAD OF BUFFALO BULL From specimen in the National Museum

Group. Reproduced from the \_Cosmopolitan Magazine\_, by permission of the

publishers.]

"From the observations made on this subject we may conclude that the

buffalo inhabited the temperate zone of the New World, and that they

inhabited it at all times. In the north they never advanced beyond the

48th or 58th degree of latitude, and in the south, although they may

have reached as low as 25°, they scarcely passed beyond the 27th or

28th degree (north latitude), at least in the inhabited and known

portions of the country."

NEW MEXICO.--In 1542 Coronado, while on his celebrated march, met with

vast herds of buffalo on the Upper Pecos River, since which the presence

of the species in the valley of the Pecos has been well known. In

describing the journey of Espejo down the Pecos River in the year 1584,

Davis says (Spanish Conquest of New Mexico, p. 260): "They passed down a

river they called \_Rio de las Vacas\_, or the River of Oxen [the river

Pecos, and the same Cow River that Vaca describes, says Professor

Allen], and was so named because of the great number of buffaloes that

fed upon its banks. They traveled down this river the distance of 120

leagues, all the way passing through great herds of buffaloes."

Professor Allen locates the western boundary of the buffalo in New

Mexico even as far west as the western side of Rio Grande del Norte.

UTAH.--It is well known that buffaloes, though in very small numbers,

once inhabited northeastern Utah, and that a few were killed by the

Mormon settlers prior to 1840 in the vicinity of Great Salt Lake. In the

museum at Salt Lake City I was shown a very ancient mounted head of a

buffalo bull which was said to have been killed in the Salt Lake Valley.

It is doubtful that such was really fact. There is no evidence that the

bison ever inhabited the southwestern half of Utah, and, considering the

general sterility of the Territory as a whole previous to its

development by irrigation, it is surprising that any buffalo in his

senses would ever set foot in it at all.

IDAHO.--The former range of the bison probably embraced the whole of

Idaho. Fremont states that in the spring of 1824 "the buffalo were

spread in immense numbers over the Green River and Bear River Valleys,

and through all the country lying between the Colorado, or Green River

of the Gulf of California, and Lewis' Fork of the Columbia River, the

meridian of Fort Hall then forming the western limit of their range."

[In J. K. Townsend's "Narrative of a Journey across the Rocky

Mountains," in 1834, he records the occurrence of herds near the Mellade

and Boise and Salmon Rivers, ten days' journey--200 miles--west of Fort

Hall.] The buffalo then remained for many years in that country, and

frequently moved down the valley of the Columbia, on both sides of the

river, as far as the Fishing Falls. Below this point they never

descended in any numbers. About 1834 or 1835 they began to diminish very

rapidly, and continued to decrease until 1838 or 1840, when, with the

country we have just described, they entirely abandoned all the waters

of the Pacific north of Lewis's Fork of the Columbia [now called Snake]

River. At that time the Flathead Indians were in the habit of finding

their buffalo on the heads of Salmon River and other streams of the

Columbia.

OREGON.--The only evidence on record of the occurrence of the bison in

Oregon is the following, from Professor Allen's memoir (p. 119):

"Respecting its former occurrence in eastern Oregon, Prof. O. C. Marsh,

under date of New Haven, February 7, 1875, writes me as follows: 'The

most western point at which I have myself observed remains of the

buffalo was in 187 on Willow Creek, eastern Oregon, among the foot hills

of the eastern side of the Blue Mountains. This is about latitude 44°.

The bones were perfectly characteristic, although nearly decomposed.'"

The remains must have been those of a solitary and very enterprising

straggler.

THE NORTHWEST TERRITORIES (British).--At two or three points only did

the buffaloes of the British Possessions cross the Rocky Mountain

barrier toward British Columbia. One was the pass through which the

Canadian Pacific Railway now runs, 200 miles north of the international

boundary. According to Dr. Richardson, the number of buffaloes which

crossed the mountains at that point were sufficiently noticeable to

constitute a feature of the fauna on the western side of the range. It

is said that buffaloes also crossed by way of the Kootenai Pass, which

is only a few miles north of the boundary line, but the number which did

so must have been very small.

As might be expected from the character of the country, the favorite

range of the bison in British America was the northern extension of the

great pasture region lying between the Missouri River and Great Slave

Lake. The most northerly occurrence of the bison is recorded as an

observation of Franklin in 1820 at Slave Point, on the north side of

Great Slave Lake. "A few frequent Slave Point, on the north side of the

lake, but this is the most northern situation in which they were

observed by Captain Franklin's party."[17]

[Note 17: Sabine, Zoological Appendix to "Franklin's Journey," p. 668.]

Dr. Richardson defined the eastern boundary of the bison's range in

British America as follows: "They do not frequent any of the districts

formed of primitive rocks, and the limits of their range to the

eastward, within the Hudson's Bay Company's territories, may be

correctly marked on the map by a line commencing in longitude 97°, on

the Red River, which flows into the south end of Lake Winnipeg, crossing

the Saskatchewan to the westward of the Basquian Hill, and running

thence by the Athapescow to the east end of Great Slave Lake." Their

migrations westward were formerly limited to the Rocky Mountain range,

and they are still unknown in New Caledonia and on the shores of the

Pacific to the north of the Columbia River; but of late years they have

found out a passage across the mountains near the sources of the

Saskatchewan, and their numbers to the westward are annually

increasing.[18]

[Note 18: Fauna Boreali-Americana, vol. 1, p, 279-280.]

\_Great Slave Lake.\_--That the buffalo inhabited the southern shore of

this lake as late as 1871 is well established by the following letter

from Mr. E. W. Nelson to Mr. J. A. Allen, under date of July 11,

1877:[19] "I have met here [St. Michaels, Alaska] two gentlemen who

crossed the mountains from British Columbia and came to Fort Yukon

through British America, from whom I have derived some information about

the buffalo (\_Bison americanus\_) which will be of interest to you. These

gentlemen descended the Peace River, and on about the one hundred and

eighteenth degree of longitude made a portage to Hay River, directly

north. On this portage they saw thousands of buffalo skulls, and old

trails, in some instances 2 or 3 feet deep, leading east and west. They

wintered on Hay River near its entrance into Great Slave Lake, and here

found the buffalo still common, occupying a restricted territory along

the southern border of the lake. This was in 1871. They made inquiry

concerning the large number of skulls seen by them on the portage, and

learned that about fifty years before, snow fell to the estimated depth

of 14 feet, and so enveloped the animals that they perished by

thousands. It is asserted that these buffaloes are larger than those of

the plains."

[Note 19: American Naturalist, xi, p. 624.]

MINNESOTA AND WISCONSIN.--A line drawn from Winnipeg to Chicago, curving

slightly to the eastward in the middle portion, will very nearly define

the eastern boundary of the buffalo's range in Minnesota and Wisconsin.

ILLINOIS AND INDIANA.--The whole of these two States were formerly

inhabited by the buffalo, the fertile prairies of Illinois being

particularly suited to their needs. It is doubtful whether the range of

the species extended north of the northern boundary of Indiana, but

since southern Michigan was as well adapted to their support as Ohio or

Indiana, their absence from that State must have been due more to

accident than design.

OHIO.--The southern shore of Lake Erie forms part of the northern

boundary of the bison's range in the eastern United States. La Hontan

explored Lake Erie in 1687 and thus describes its southern shore: "I can

not express what quantities of Deer and Turkeys are to be found in these

Woods, and in the vast Meads that lye upon the South side of the Lake.

At the bottom of the Lake we find beeves upon the Banks of two pleasant

Rivers that disembogue into it, without Cataracts or Rapid

Currents."[20] It thus appears that the southern shore of Lake Erie

forms part of the northern boundary of the buffalo's range in the

eastern United States.

[Note 20: J. A. Allen's \_American Bisons\_, p. 107.]

NEW YORK.--In regard to the presence of the bison in any portion of the

State of New York, Professor Allen considers the evidence as fairly

conclusive that it once existed in western New York, not only in the

vicinity of the eastern end of Lake Erie, where now stands the city of

Buffalo, at the mouth of a large creek of the same name, but also on the

shore of Lake Ontario, probably in Orleans County. In his monograph of

"The American Bisons," page 107, he gives the following testimony and

conclusions on this point:

"The occurrence of a stream in western New York, called Buffalo Creek,

which empties into the eastern end of Lake Erie, is commonly viewed as

traditional evidence of its occurrence at this point, but positive

testimony to this effect has thus far escaped me.

"This locality, if it actually came so far eastward, must have formed

the eastern limit of its range along the lakes. I have found only highly

questionable allusions to the occurrence of buffaloes along the southern

shore of Lake Ontario. Keating, on the authority of Colhoun, however,

has cited a passage from Morton's "New English Canaan" as proof of their

former existence in the neighborhood of this lake. Morton's statement is

based on Indian reports, and the context gives sufficient evidence of

the general vagueness of his knowledge of the region of which he was

speaking. The passage, printed in 1637 is as follows: They [the Indians]

have also made descriptions of great heards of well growne beasts that

live about the parts of this lake [Erocoise] such as the Christian world

(untill this discovery) hath not bin made acquainted with. These Beasts

are of the bignesse of a Cowe, their flesh being very good foode, their

hides good lether, their fleeces very usefull, being a kinde of wolle as

fine almost as the wolle of the Beaver, and the Salvages doe make

garments thereof. It is tenne yeares since first the relation of these

things came to the eares of the English.' The 'beast' to which allusion

is here made [says Professor Allen] is unquestionably the buffalo, but

the locality of Lake 'Erocoise' is not so easily settled. Colhoun

regards it, and probably correctly, as identical with Lake Ontario. \* \*

\* The extreme northeastern limit of the former range of the buffalo

seems to have been, as above stated, in western New York, near the

eastern end of Lake Erie. That it probably ranged thus far there is fair

evidence."

PENNSYLVANIA.--From the eastern end of Lake Erie the boundary of the

bison's habitat extends south into western Pennsylvania, to a marsh

called Buffalo Swamp on a map published by Peter Kalm in 1771. Professor

Allen says it "is indicated as situated between the Alleghany River and

the West Branch of the Susquehanna, near the heads of the Licking and

Toby's Creeks (apparently the streams now called Oil Creek and Clarion

Creek)." In this region there were at one time thousands of buffaloes.

While there is not at hand any positive evidence that the buffalo ever

inhabited the southwestern portion of Pennsylvania, its presence in the

locality mentioned above, and in West Virginia generally, on the south,

furnishes sufficient reason for extending the boundary so as to include

the southwestern portion of the State and connect with our starting

point, the District of Columbia.

III. ABUNDANCE.

Of all the quadrupeds that have lived upon the earth, probably no other

species has ever marshaled such innumerable hosts as those of the

American bison. It would have been as easy to count or to estimate the

number of leaves in a forest as to calculate the number of buffaloes

living at any given time during the history of the species previous to

1870. Even in South Central Africa, which has always been exceedingly

prolific in great herds of game, it is probable that all its quadrupeds

taken together on an equal area would never have more than equaled the

total number of buffalo in this country forty years ago.

To an African hunter, such a statement may seem incredible, but it

appears to be fully warranted by the literature of both branches of the

subject.

Not only did the buffalo formerly range eastward far into the forest

regions of western New York, Pennsylvania, Virginia, the Carolinas, and

Georgia, but in some places it was so abundant as to cause remark. In

Mr. J. A. Allen's valuable monograph[21] appear a great number of

interesting historical references on this subject, as indeed to every

other relating to the buffalo, a few of which I will take the liberty of

quoting.

[Note 21: All who are especially interested in the life history of the

buffalo, both scientific and economical, will do well to consult Mr.

Allen's monograph, "The American Bisons, Living and Extinct," if it be

accessible. Unfortunately it is a difficult matter for the general

reader to obtain it. A reprint of the work as originally published, but

omitting the map, plates, and such of the subject-matter as relates to

the extinct species, appears in Hayden's "Report of the Geological

Survey of the Territories," for 1875 (pp. 443-587), but the volume has

for several years been out of print.

The memoir as originally published has the following titles:

\_Memoirs of the Geological Survey of Kentucky.| N. S. Shaler, Director.|

Vol. I. Part II.|--| The American Bisons,| living and extinct.| By J. A.

Allen.| With twelve plates and map.|--| University press, Cambridge:|

Welch, Bigelow & Co.| 1876.\_

\_Memoirs of the Museum of Comparative Zoology,| at Harvard College,

Cambridge, Mass.| Vol. IV. No. 10.|--| The American Bisons,| living and

extinct.| By J. A. Allen.| Published by permission of N. S. Shaler,

Director of the Kentucky| Geological Survey.| With twelve plates and a

map.| University press, Cambridge:| Welch, Bigelow & Co.| 1876.|\_

\_4to., pp. i-ix, 1-246, 1 col'd map, 12 pl., 13 ll. explanatory, 2

wood-cuts in text.\_

These two publications were simultaneous, and only differed in the

titles. Unfortunately both are of greater rarity than the reprint

referred to above.]

In the vicinity of the spot where the town of Clarion now stands, in

northwestern Pennsylvania, Mr. Thomas Ashe relates that one of the first

settlers built his log cabin near a salt spring which was visited by

buffaloes in such numbers that "he supposed there could not have been

less than two thousand in the neighborhood of the spring." During the

first years of his residence there, the buffaloes came in droves of

about three hundred each.

Of the Blue Licks in Kentucky, Mr. John Filson thus wrote, in 1784: "The

amazing herds of buffaloes which resort thither, by their size and

number, fill the traveller with amazement and terror, especially when

he beholds the prodigious roads they have made from all quarters, as if

leading to some populous city; the vast space of land around these

springs desolated as if by a ravaging enemy, and hills reduced to

plains; for the land near these springs is chiefly hilly. \* \* \* I have

heard a hunter assert he saw above one thousand buffaloes at the Blue

Licks at once; so numerous were they before the first settlers had

wantonly sported away their lives." Col. Daniel Boone declared of the

Red River region in Kentucky, "The buffaloes were more frequent than I

have seen cattle in the settlements, browzing on the leaves of the cane,

or cropping the herbage of those extensive plains, fearless because

ignorant of the violence of man. Sometimes we saw hundreds in a drove,

and the numbers about the salt springs were amazing."

According to Ramsey, where Nashville now stands, in 1770 there were

"immense numbers of buffalo and other wild game. The country was crowded

with them. Their bellowings sounded from the hills and forest." Daniel

Boone found vast herds of buffalo grazing in the valleys of East

Tennessee, between the spurs of the Cumberland mountains.

Marquette declared that the prairies along the Illinois River were

"covered with buffaloes." Father Hennepin, in writing of northern

Illinois, between Chicago and the Illinois River, asserted that "there

must be an innumerable quantity of wild bulls in that country, since the

earth is covered with their horns. \* \* \* They follow one another, so

that you may see a drove of them for above a league together. \* \* \*

Their ways are as beaten as our great roads, and no herb grows therein."

Judged by ordinary standards of comparison, the early pioneers of the

last century thought buffalo were abundant in the localities mentioned

above. But the herds which lived east of the Mississippi were

comparatively only mere stragglers from the innumerable mass which

covered the great western pasture region from the Mississippi to the

Rocky Mountains, and from the Rio Grande to Great Slave Lake. The town

of Kearney, in south central Nebraska, may fairly be considered the

geographical center of distribution of the species, as it originally

existed, but ever since 1800, and until a few years ago, the center of

population has been in the Black Hills of southwestern Dakota.

Between the Rocky Mountains and the States lying along the Mississippi

River on the west, from Minnesota to Louisiana, the whole country was

one vast buffalo range, inhabited by millions of buffaloes. One could

fill a volume with the records of plainsmen and pioneers who penetrated

or crossed that vast region between 1800 and 1870, and were in turn

surprised, astounded, and frequently dismayed by the tens of thousands

of buffaloes they observed, avoided, or escaped from. They lived and

moved as no other quadrupeds ever have, in great multitudes, like grand

armies in review, covering scores of square miles at once. They were so

numerous they frequently stopped boats in the rivers, threatened to

overwhelm travelers on the plains, and in later years derailed

locomotives and cars, until railway engineers learned by experience the

wisdom of stopping their trains whenever there were buffaloes crossing

the track. On this feature of the buffalo's life history a few detailed

observations may be of value.

Near the mouth of the White River, in southwestern Dakota, Lewis and

Clark saw (in 1806) a herd of buffalo which caused them to make the

following record in their journal:

"These last animals [buffaloes] are now so numerous that from an

eminence we discovered more than we had ever seen before at one time;

and if it be not impossible to calculate the moving multitude, which

darkened the whole plains, we are convinced that twenty thousand would

be no exaggerated number."

When near the mouth of the Yellowstone, on their way down the Missouri,

a previous record had been made of a meeting with other herds:

"The buffalo now appear in vast numbers. A herd happened to be on their

way across the river [the Missouri]. Such was the multitude of these

animals that although the river, including an island over which they

passed, was a mile in length, the herd stretched as thick as they could

swim completely from one side to the other, and the party was obliged to

stop for an hour. They consoled themselves for the delay by killing four

of the herd, and then proceeded till at the distance of 45 miles they

halted on an island, below which two other herds of buffalo, as numerous

as the first, soon after crossed the river."[22]

[Note 22: Lewis and Clark's Exped., II, p. 395.]

Perhaps the most vivid picture ever afforded of the former abundance of

buffalo is that given by Col. R. I. Dodge in his "Plains of the Great

West," p. 120, \_et seq.\_ It is well worth reproducing entire:

"In May, 1871, I drove in a light wagon from Old Fort Zara to Fort

Larned, on the Arkansas, 34 miles. At least 25 miles of this distance

was through one immense herd, composed of countless smaller herds of

buffalo then on their journey north. The road ran along the broad level

'bottom,' or valley, of the river. \* \* \*

"The whole country appeared one great mass of buffalo, moving slowly to

the northward; and it was only when actually among them that it could be

ascertained that the apparently solid mass was an agglomeration of

innumerable small herds, of from fifty to two hundred animals, separated

from the surrounding herds by greater or less space, but still

separated. The herds in the valley sullenly got out of my way, and,

turning, stared stupidly at me, sometimes at only a few yards' distance.

When I had reached a point where the hills were no longer more than a

mile from the road, the buffalo on the hills, seeing an unusual object

in their rear, turned, stared an instant, then started at full speed

directly towards me, stampeding and bringing with them the numberless

herds through which they passed, and pouring down upon me all the herds,

no longer separated, but one immense compact mass of plunging animals,

mad with fright, and as irresistible as an avalanche.

"The situation was by no means pleasant. Reining up my horse (which was

fortunately a quiet old beast that had been in at the death of many a

buffalo, so that their wildest, maddest rush only caused him to cock his

ears in wonder at their unnecessary excitement), I waited until the

front of the mass was within 50 yards, when a few well-directed shots

from my rifle split the herd, and sent it pouring off in two streams to

my right and left. When all had passed me they stopped, apparently

perfectly satisfied, though thousands were yet within reach of my rifle

and many within less than 100 yards. Disdaining to fire again, I sent my

servant to cut out the tongues of the fallen. This occurred so

frequently within the next 10 miles, that when I arrived at Fort Larned

I had twenty-six tongues in my wagon, representing the greatest number

of buffalo that my conscience can reproach me for having murdered on any

single day. I was not hunting, wanted no meat, and would not voluntarily

have fired at these herds. I killed only in self-preservation and fired

almost every shot from the wagon."

At my request Colonel Dodge has kindly furnished me a careful estimate

upon which to base a calculation of the number of buffaloes in that

great herd, and the result is very interesting. In a private letter,

dated September 21, 1887, he writes as follows:

"The great herd on the Arkansas through which I passed could not have

averaged, \_at rest\_, over fifteen or twenty individuals to the acre, but

was, from my own observation, not less than 25 miles wide, and from

reports of hunters and others it was about five days in passing a given

point, or not less than 50 miles deep. From the top of Pawnee Rock I

could see from 6 to 10 miles in almost every direction. This whole vast

space was covered with buffalo, looking at a distance like one compact

mass, the visual angle not permitting the ground to be seen. I have seen

such a sight a great number of times, but never on so large a scale.

"That was the last of the great herds."

With these figures before us, it is not difficult to make a calculation

that will be somewhere near the truth of the number of buffaloes

actually seen in one day by Colonel Dodge on the Arkansas River during

that memorable drive, and also of the number of head in the entire herd.

According to his recorded observation, the herd extended along the river

for a distance of 25 miles, which was in reality the width of the vast

procession that was moving north, and back from the road as far as the

eye could reach, on both sides. It is making a low estimate to consider

the extent of the visible ground at 1 mile on either side. This gives a

strip of country 2 miles wide by 25 long, or a total of 50 square miles

covered with buffalo, averaging from fifteen to twenty to the acre.[23]

Taking the lesser number, in order to be below the truth rather than

above it, we find that the number actually seen on that day by Colonel

Dodge was in the neighborhood of 480,000, not counting the additional

number taken in at the view from the top of Pawnee Rock, which, if

added, would easily bring the total up to a round half million!

[Note 23: On the plains of Dakota, the Rev. Mr. Belcourt (Schoolcraft's

N. A. Indians, IV, p. 108) once counted two hundred and twenty-eight

buffaloes, a part of a great herd, feeding on a single acre of ground.

This of course was an unusual occurrence with buffaloes not stampeding,

but practically at rest. It is quite possible also that the extent of

the ground may have been underestimated.]

If the advancing multitude had been at all points 50 miles in length (as

it was known to have been in some places at least) by 25 miles in width,

and still averaged fifteen head to the acre of ground, it would have

contained the enormous number of 12,000,000 head. But, judging from the

general principles governing such migrations, it is almost certain that

the moving mass advanced in the shape of a wedge, which would make it

necessary to deduct about two-third from the grand total, which would

leave 4,000,000 as our estimate of the actual number of buffaloes in

this great herd, which I believe is more likely to be below the truth

than above it.

No wonder that the men of the West of those days, both white and red,

thought it would be impossible to exterminate such a mighty multitude.

The Indians of some tribes believed that the buffaloes issued from the

earth continually, and that the supply was necessarily inexhaustible.

And yet, in four short years the southern herd was almost totally

annihilated.

With such a lesson before our eyes, confirmed in every detail by living

testimony, who will dare to say that there will be an elk, moose,

caribou, mountain sheep, mountain goat, antelope, or black-tail deer

left alive in the United States in a wild state fifty years from this

date, ay, or even twenty-five?

Mr. William Blackmore contributes the following testimony to the

abundance of buffalo in Kansas:[24]

[Note 24: Plains of the Great West, p. xvi.]

"In the autumn of 1868, whilst crossing the plains on the Kansas Pacific

Railroad, for a distance of upwards of 120 miles, between Ellsworth and

Sheridan, we passed through an almost unbroken herd of buffalo. The

plains were blackened with them, and more than once the train had to

stop to allow unusually large herds to pass. \* \* \* In 1872, whilst on a

scout for about a hundred miles south of Fort Dodge to the Indian

Territory, we were never out of sight of buffalo."

Twenty years hence, when not even a bone or a buffalo-chip remains above

ground throughout the West to mark the presence of the buffalo, it may

be difficult for people to believe that these animals ever existed in

such numbers as to constitute not only a serious annoyance, but very

often a dangerous menace to wagon travel across the plains, and also to

stop railway trains, and even throw them off the track. The like has

probably never occurred before in any country, and most assuredly never

will again, if the present rate of large game destruction all over the

world can be taken as a foreshadowing of the future. In this connection

the following additional testimony from Colonel Dodge ("Plains of the

Great West," p. 121) is of interest:

"The Atchison, Topeka and Santa Fé Railroad was then [in 1871-'72] in

process of construction, and nowhere could the peculiarity of the

buffalo of which I am speaking be better studied than from its trains.

If a herd was on the north side of the track, it would stand stupidly

gazing, and without a symptom of alarm, although the locomotive passed

within a hundred yards. If on the south side of the track, even though

at a distance of 1 or 2 miles from it, the passage of a train set the

whole herd in the wildest commotion. At full speed, and utterly

regardless of the consequences, it would make for the track on its line

of retreat. If the train happened not to be in its path, it crossed the

track and stopped satisfied. If the train was in its way, each

individual buffalo went at it with the desperation of despair, plunging

against or between locomotive and cars, just as its blind madness

chanced to direct it. Numbers were killed, but numbers still pressed on,

to stop and stare as soon as the obstacle had passed. After having

trains thrown off the track twice in one week, conductors learned to

have a very decided respect for the idiosyncrasies of the buffalo, and

when there was a possibility of striking a herd 'on the rampage' for the

north side of the track, the train was slowed up and sometimes stopped

entirely."

The accompanying illustration, reproduced from the "Plains of the Great

West," by the kind permission of the author, is, in one sense, ocular

proof that collisions between railway trains and vast herds of buffaloes

were so numerous that they formed a proper subject for illustration. In

regard to the stoppage of trains and derailment of locomotives by

buffaloes, Colonel Dodge makes the following allusion in the private

letter already referred to: "There are at least a hundred reliable

railroad men now employed on the Atchison, Topeka and Santa Fé Railroad

who were witnesses of, and sometimes sufferers from, the wild rushes of

buffalo as described on page 121 of my book. I was at the time stationed

at Fort Dodge, and I was personally cognizant of several of these

'accidents.'"

[Illustration: SLAUGHTER OF BUFFALO ON THE KANSAS PACIFIC RAILROAD.

Reproduced from "The Plains of the Great West," by permission of the

author, Col. R. I. Dodge.]

The following, from the ever pleasing pen of Mr. Catlin, is of decided

interest in this connection:

"In one instance, near the mouth of White River, we met the most immense

herd crossing the Missouri River [in Dakota], and from an imprudence got

our boat into imminent danger amongst them, from which we were highly

delighted to make our escape. It was in the midst of the 'running

season,' and we had heard the 'roaring' (as it is called) of the herd

when we were several miles from them. When we came in sight, we were

actually terrified at the immense numbers that were streaming down the

green hills on one side of the river, and galloping up and over the

bluffs on the other. The river was filled, and in parts blackened with

their heads and horns, as they were swimming about, following up their

objects, and making desperate battle whilst they were swimming. I deemed

it imprudent for our canoe to be dodging amongst them, and ran it ashore

for a few hours, where we laid, waiting for the opportunity of seeing

the river clear, but we waited in vain. Their numbers, however, got

somewhat diminished at last, and we pushed off, and successfully made

our way amongst them. From the immense numbers that had passed the river

at that place, they had torn down the prairie bank of 15 feet in height,

so as to form a sort of road or landing place, where they all in

succession clambered up. Many in their turmoil had been wafted below

this landing, and unable to regain it against the swiftness of the

current, had fastened themselves along in crowds, hugging close to the

high bank under which they were standing. As we were drifting by these,

and supposing ourselves out of danger, I drew up my rifle and shot one

of them in the head, which tumbled into the water, and brought with him

a hundred others, which plunged in, and in a moment were swimming about

our canoe, and placing it in great danger. No attack was made upon us,

and in the confusion the poor beasts knew not, perhaps, the enemy that

was amongst them; but we were liable to be sunk by them, as they were

furiously hooking and climbing on to each other. I rose in my canoe, and

by my gestures and hallooing kept them from coming in contact with us

until we were out of their reach."[25]

[Note 25: Catlin's North American Indians, II, p. 13.]

IV. CHARACTER OF THE SPECIES.

1. \_The buffaloes rank amongst ruminants.\_--With the American people,

and through them all others, familiarity with the buffalo has bred

contempt. The incredible numbers in which the animals of this species

formerly existed made their slaughter an easy matter, so much so that

the hunters and frontiersmen who accomplished their destruction have

handed down to us a contemptuous opinion of the size, character, and

general presence of our bison. And how could it be otherwise than that a

man who could find it in his heart to murder a majestic bull bison for a

hide worth only a dollar should form a one-dollar estimate of the

grandest ruminant that ever trod the earth? Men who butcher African

elephants for the sake of their ivory also entertain a similar estimate

of their victims.

With an acquaintance which includes fine living examples of all the

larger ruminants of the world except the musk-ox and the European bison,

I am sure that the American bison is the grandest of them all. His only

rivals for the kingship are the Indian bison, or gaur (\_Bos gaurus\_), of

Southern India, and the aurochs, or European bison, both of which

really surpass him in height, if not in actual balk also. The aurochs is

taller, and possesses a larger pelvis and heavier, stronger

hindquarters, but his body is decidedly smaller in all its proportions,

which gives him a lean and "leggy" look. The hair on the head, neck, and

forequarters of the aurochs is not nearly so long or luxuriant as on the

same parts of the American bison. This covering greatly magnifies the

actual bulk of the latter animal. Clothe the aurochs with the wonderful

pelage of our buffalo, give him the same enormous chest and body, and

the result would be a magnificent bovine monster, who would indeed stand

without a rival. But when first-class types of the two species are

placed side by side it seems to me that \_Bison americanus\_ will easily

rank his European rival.

The gaur has no long hair upon any part of his body or head. What little

hair he has is very short and thin, his hindquarters being almost naked.

I have seen hundreds of these animals at short range, and have killed

and skinned several very fine specimens, one of which stood 5 feet 10

inches in height at the shoulders. But, despite his larger bulk, his

appearance is not nearly so striking and impressive as that of the male

American bison. He seems like a huge ox running wild.

The magnificent dark brown frontlet and beard of the buffalo, the shaggy

coat of hair upon the neck, hump, and shoulders, terminating at the

knees in a thick mass of luxuriant black locks, to say nothing of the

dense coat of finer fur on the body and hindquarters, give to our

species not only an apparent height equal to that of the gaur, but a

grandeur and nobility of presence which are beyond all comparison

amongst ruminants.

The slightly larger bulk of the gaur is of little significance in a

comparison of the two species; for if size alone is to turn the scale,

we must admit that a 500-pound lioness, with no mane whatever, is a more

majestic looking animal than a 450-pound lion, with a mane which has

earned him his title of king of beasts.

2. \_Change of form in captivity.\_--By a combination of unfortunate

circumstances, the American bison is destined to go down to posterity

shorn of the honor which is his due, and appreciated at only half his

worth. The hunters who slew him were from the very beginning so absorbed

in the scramble for spoils that they had no time to measure or weigh

him, nor even to notice the majesty of his personal appearance on his

native heath.

In captivity he fails to develop as finely as in his wild state, and

with the loss of his liberty he becomes a tame-looking animal. He gets

fat and short-bodied, and the lack of vigorous and constant exercise

prevents the development of bone and muscle which made the prairie

animal what he was.

From observations made upon buffaloes that have been reared in

captivity, I am firmly convinced that confinement and

semi-domestication are destined to effect striking changes in the form

of \_Bison americanus\_. While this is to be expected to a certain extent

with most large species, the changes promise to be most conspicuous in

the buffalo. The most striking change is in the body between the hips

and the shoulders. As before remarked, it becomes astonishingly short

and rotund, and through liberal feeding and total lack of exercise the

muscles of the shoulders and hindquarters, especially the latter, are

but feebly developed.

The most striking example of the change of form in the captive buffalo

is the cow in the Central Park Menagerie, New York. Although this animal

is fully adult, and has given birth to three fine calves, she is small,

astonishingly short-bodied, and in comparison with the magnificently

developed cows taken in 1886 by the writer in Montana, she seems almost

like an animal of another species.

Both the live buffaloes in the National Museum collection of living

animals are developing the same shortness of body and lack of muscle,

and when they attain their full growth will but poorly resemble the

splendid proportions of the wild specimens in the Museum mounted group,

each of which has been mounted from a most careful and elaborate series

of post-mortem measurements. It may fairly be considered, however, that

the specimens taken by the Smithsonian expedition were in every way more

perfect representatives of the species than have been usually taken in

times past, for the simple reason that on account of the muscle they had

developed in the numerous chases they had survived, and the total

absence of the fat which once formed such a prominent feature of the

animal, they were of finer form, more active habit, and keener

intelligence than buffaloes possessed when they were so numerous. Out of

the millions which once composed the great northern herd, those

represented the survival of the fittest, and their existence at that

time was chiefly due to the keenness of their senses and their splendid

muscular powers in speed and endurance.

Under such conditions it is only natural that animals of the highest

class should be developed. On the other hand, captivity reverses all

these conditions, while yielding an equally abundant food supply.

In no feature is the change from natural conditions to captivity more

easily noticeable than in the eye. In the wild buffalo the eye is always

deeply set, well protected by the edge of the bony orbit, and perfect in

form and expression. The lids are firmly drawn around the ball, the

opening is so small that the white portion of the eyeball is entirely

covered, and the whole form and appearance of the organ is as shapely

and as pleasing in expression as the eye of a deer.

In the captive the various muscles which support and control the eyeball

seem to relax and thicken, and the ball protrudes far beyond its normal

plane, showing a circle of white all around the iris, and bulging out in

a most unnatural way. I do not mean to assert that this is common in

captive buffaloes generally, but I have observed it to be disagreeably

conspicuous in many.

Another change which takes place in the form of the captive buffalo is

an arching of the back in the middle, which has a tendency to make the

hump look lower at the shoulders and visibly alters the outline of the

back. This tendency to "hump up" the back is very noticeable in domestic

cattle and horses during rainy weather. While a buffalo on his native

heath would seldom assume such an attitude of dejection and misery, in

captivity, especially if it be anything like close confinement, it is

often to be observed, and I fear will eventually become a permanent

habit. Indeed, I think it may be confidently predicted that the time

will come when naturalists who have never seen a wild buffalo will

compare the specimens composing the National Museum group with the

living representatives to be seen in captivity and assert that the

former are exaggerations in both form and size.

3. \_Mounted Specimens in Museums.\_--Of the "stuffed" specimens to be

found in museums, all that I have ever seen outside of the National

Museum and even those within that institution up to 1886, were "stuffed"

in reality as well as in name. The skins that have been rammed full of

straw or excelsior have lost from 8 to 12 inches in height at the

shoulders, and the high and sharp hump of the male has become a huge,

thick, rounded mass like the hump of a dromedary, and totally unlike the

hump of a bison. It is impossible for any taxidermist to stuff a

buffalo-skin with loose materials and produce a specimen which fitly

represents the species. The proper height and form of the animal can be

secured and retained only by the construction of a manikin, or statue,

to carry the skin. In view of this fact, which surely must be apparent

to even the most casual observer, it is to be earnestly hoped that here

no one in authority will ever consent to mount or have mounted a

valuable skin of a bison in any other way than over a properly

constructed manikin.

4. \_The Calf.\_--The breeding season of the buffalo is from the 1st of

July to the 1st of October. The young cow does not breed until she is

three years old, and although two calves are sometimes produced at a

birth, one is the usual number. The calves are born in April, May, and

June, and sometimes, though rarely, as late as the middle of August. The

calf follows its mother until it is a year old, or even older. In May,

1886, the Smithsonian expedition captured a calf alive, which had been

abandoned by its mother because it could not keep up with her. The

little creature was apparently between two and three weeks old, and was

therefore born about May 1. Unlike the young of nearly all other

\_Bovidæ\_, the buffalo calf during the first months of its existence is

clad with hair of a totally different color from that which covers him

during the remainder of his life. His pelage is a luxuriant growth of

rather long, wavy hair, of a uniform brownish-yellow or "sandy" color

(cinnamon, or yellow ocher, with a shade of Indian yellow) all over the

head, body, and tail, in striking contrast with the darker colors of the

older animals. On the lower half of the leg it is lighter, shorter, and

straight. On the shoulders and hump the hair is longer than on the

other portions, being 11/2 inches in length, more wavy, and already

arranges itself in the tufts, or small bunches, so characteristic in the

adult animal.

On the extremity of the muzzle, including the chin, the hair is very

short, straight, and as light in color as the lower portions of the leg.

Starting on the top of the nose, an inch behind the nostrils, and

forming a division between the light yellowish muzzle and the more

reddish hair on the remainder of the head, there is an irregular band of

dark, straight hair, which extends down past the corner of the mouth to

a point just back of the chin, where it unites. From the chin backward

the dark band increases in breadth and intensity, and continues back

half way to the angle of the jaw. At that point begins a sort of under

mane of wavy, dark-brown hair, nearly 3 inches long, and extends back

along the median line of the throat to a point between the fore legs,

where it abruptly terminates. From the back of the head another streak

of dark hair extends backward along the top of the neck, over the hump,

and down to the lumbar region, where it fades out entirely. These two

dark bands are in sharp contrast to the light sandy hair adjoining.

The tail is densely haired. The tuft on the end is quite luxuriant, and

shows a center of darker hair. The hair on the inside of the ear is

dark, but that on the outside is sandy.

The naked portion of the nose is light Vandyke-brown, with a pinkish

tinge, and the edge of the eyelid the same. The iris is dark brown. The

horn at three months is about 1 inch in length, and is a mere little

black stub. In the male, the hump is clearly defined, but by no means so

high in proportion as in the adult animal. The hump of the calf from

which this description is drawn is of about the same relative angle and

height as that of an adult cow buffalo. The specimen itself is well

represented in the accompanying plate.

The measurements of this specimen in the flesh were as follows:

+---------------------------------------------------------+

| BISON AMERICANUS. (Male; four months old.) |

+---------------------------------------------------------+

| (\_No. 15503, National Museum collection.\_) |

+---------------------------------------------------------+

| |Feet.|Inches.|

|Height at shoulders | 2 | 8 |

|Length, head and body to insertion of tail | 3 | 101/2 |

|Depth of chest | 1 | 4 |

|Depth of flank | | 10 |

|Girth behind fore leg | 3 | 1/2 |

|From base of horns around end of nose | 1 | 71/2 |

|Length of tail vertebræ | | 7 |

+---------------------------------------------------------+

The calves begin to shed their coat of red hair about the beginning of

August. The first signs of the change, however, appear about a month

earlier than that, in the darkening of the mane under the throat, and

also on the top of the neck.[26]

[Note 26: Our captive had, in some way, bruised the skin on his

forehead, and in June all the hair came off the top of his head, leaving

it quite bald. We kept the skin well greased with porpoise oil, and by

the middle of July a fine coat of black hair had grown out all over the

surface that had previously been bare.]

By the 1st of August the red hair on the body begins to fall off in

small patches, and the growth of fine, new, dark hair seems to actually

crowd off the old. As is the case with the adult animals, the shortest

hair is the first to be shed, but the change of coat takes place in

about half the time that it occupies in the older animals.

By the 1st of October the transformation is complete, and not even a

patch of the old red hair remains upon the new suit of brown. This is

far from being the case with the old bulls and cows, for even up to the

last week in October we found them with an occasional patch of the old

hair still clinging to the new, on the back or shoulders.

Like most young animals, the calf of the buffalo is very easily tamed,

especially if taken when only a few weeks old. The one captured in

Montana by the writer, resisted at first as stoutly as it was able, by

butting with its head, but after we had tied its legs together and

carried it to camp, across a horse, it made up its mind to yield

gracefully to the inevitable, and from that moment became perfectly

docile. It very soon learned to drink milk in the most satisfactory

manner, and adapted itself to its new surroundings quite as readily as

any domestic calf would have done. Its only cry was a low-pitched,

pig-like grunt through the nose, which was uttered only when hungry or

thirsty.

I have been told by old frontiersmen and buffalo-hunters that it used to

be a common practice for a hunter who had captured a young calf to make

it follow him by placing one of his fingers in its mouth, and allowing

the calf to suck at it for a moment. Often a calf has been induced in

this way to follow a horseman for miles, and eventually to join his camp

outfit. It is said that the same result has been accomplished with

calves by breathing a few times into their nostrils. In this connection

Mr. Catlin's observations on the habits of buffalo calves are most

interesting.

"In pursuing a large herd of buffaloes at the season when their calves

are but a few weeks old, I have often been exceedingly amused with the

curious maneuvers of these shy little things. Amidst the thundering

confusion of a throng of several hundreds or several thousands of these

animals, there will be many of the calves that lose sight of their dams;

and being left behind by the throng, and the swift-passing hunters, they

endeavor to secrete themselves, when they are exceedingly put to it on a

level prairie, where naught can be seen but the short grass of 6 or 8

inches in height, save an occasional bunch of wild sage a few inches

higher, to which the poor affrighted things will run, and dropping on

their knees, will push their noses under it and into the grass, where

they will stand for hours, with their eyes shut, imagining themselves

securely hid, whilst they are standing up quite straight upon their hind

feet, and can easily be seen at several miles distance. It is a familiar

amusement with us, accustomed to these scenes, to retreat back over the

ground where we have just escorted the herd, and approach these little

trembling things, which stubbornly maintain their positions, with

their noses pushed under the grass and their eyes strained upon us, us

we dismount from our horses and are passing around them. From this fixed

position they are sure not to move until hands are laid upon them, and

then for the shins of a novice we can extend our sympathy; or if he can

preserve the skin on his bones from the furious buttings of its head, we

know how to congratulate him on his signal success and good luck.

[Illustration: From photograph of group in National Museum. Engraved by

R. H. Carson. BUFFALO COW, CALF (FOUR MONTHS OLD), AND YEARLING.

Reproduced from the \_Cosmopolitan Magazine\_, by permission of the

publishers.]

"In these desperate struggles for a moment, the little thing is

conquered, and makes no further resistance. And I have often, in

concurrence with a known custom of the country, held my hands over the

eyes of the calf and breathed a few strong breaths into its nostrils,

after which I have, with my hunting companions, rode several miles into

our encampment with the little prisoner busily following the heels of my

horse the whole way, as closely and as affectionately as its instinct

would attach it to the company of its dam.

"This is one of the most extraordinary things that I have met with in

the habits of this wild country, and although I had often heard of it,

and felt unable exactly to believe it, I am now willing to bear

testimony to the fact from the numerous instances which I have witnessed

since I came into the country. During the time that I resided at this

post [mouth of the Tetón River] in the spring of the year, on my way up

the river, I assisted (in numerous hunts of the buffalo with the fur

company's men) in bringing in, in the above manner, several of these

little prisoners, which sometimes followed for 5 or 6 miles close to our

horse's heels, and even into the fur company's fort, and into the stable

where our horses were led. In this way, before I left the headwaters of

the Missouri, I think we had collected about a dozen, which Mr. Laidlaw

was successfully raising with the aid of a good milch cow."[27]

[Note 27: North American Indians, I, 255.]

It must be remembered, however, that such cases as the above were

exceptional, even with the very young calves, which alone exhibited the

trait described. Such instances occurred only when buffaloes existed in

such countless numbers that man's presence and influence had not

affected the character of the animal in the least. No such instances of

innocent stupidity will ever be displayed again, even by the youngest

calf. The war of extermination, and the struggle for life and security

have instilled into the calf, even from its birth, a mortal fear of both

men and horses, and the instinct to fly for life. The calf captured by

our party was not able to run, but in the most absurd manner it butted

our horses as soon as they came near enough, and when Private Moran

attempted to lay hold of the little fellow it turned upon him, struck

him in the stomach with its head, and sent him sprawling into the

sage-brush. If it had only possessed the strength, it would have led us

a lively chase.

During 1886 four other buffalo calves were either killed or caught by

the cowboys on the Missouri-Yellowstone divide, in the Dry Creek

region. All of them ran the moment they discovered their enemies. Two

were shot and killed. One was caught by a cowboy named Horace Brodhurst,

ear marked, and turned loose. The fifth one was caught in September on

the Porcupine Creek round-up. He was then about five months old, and

being abundantly able to travel he showed a clean pair of heels. It took

three fresh horses, one after another, to catch him, and his final

capture was due to exhaustion, and not to the speed of any of his

pursuers. The distance covered by the chase, from the point where his

first pursuer started to where the third one finally lassoed him, was

considered to be at least 15 miles. But the capture came to naught, for

on the following day the calf died from overexertion and want of milk.

Colonel Dodge states that the very young calves of a herd have to depend

upon the old bulls for protection, and seldom in vain. The mothers

abandon their offspring on slight provocation, and even none at all

sometimes, if we may judge from the condition of the little waif that

fell into our hands. Had its mother remained with it, or even in its

neighborhood, we should at least have seen her, but she was nowhere

within a radius of 5 miles at the time her calf was discovered. Nor did

she return to look for it, as two of us proved by spending the night in

the sage-brush at the very spot where the calf was taken. Colonel Dodge

declares that "the cow seems to possess scarcely a trace of maternal

instinct, and, when frightened, will abandon and run away from her calf

without the slightest hesitation. \* \* \* When the calves are young they

are always kept in the center of each small herd, while the bulls

dispose themselves on the outside."[28]

[Note 28: Plains of the Great West, pp. 124, 125.]

Apparently the maternal instinct of the cow buffalo was easily mastered

by fear. That it was often manifested, however, is proven by the

following from Audubon and Bachman:[29]

[Note 29: Quadrupeds of North America, vol. II, pp. 38, 39.]

"Buffalo calves are drowned from being unable to ascend the steep banks

of the rivers across which they have just swam, as the cows cannot help

them, although they stand near the bank, and will not leave them to

their fate unless something alarms them.

"On one occasion Mr. Kipp, of the American Fur Company, caught eleven

calves, their dams all the time standing near the top of the bank.

Frequently, however, the cows leave the young to their fate, when most

of them perish. In connection with this part of the subject, we may add

that we were informed, when on the Upper Missouri River, that when the

banks of that river were practicable for cows, and their calves could

not follow them, they went down again, after having gained the top, and

would remain by them until forced away by the cravings of hunger. When

thus forced by the necessity of saving themselves to quit their young,

they seldom, if ever, return to them. When a large herd of these wild

animals are crossing a river, the calves or yearlings manage to get on

the backs of the cows, and are thus conveyed safely over."

5. \_The Yearling.\_--During the first five months of his life, the calf

changes its coat completely, and becomes in appearance a totally

different animal. By the time he is six months old he has taken on all

the colors which distinguish him in after life, excepting that upon his

fore quarters. The hair on the head has started out to attain the

luxuriant length and density which is so conspicuous in the adult, and

its general color is a rich dark brown, shading to black under the chin

and throat. The fringe under the neck is long, straight, and black, and

the under parts, the back of the fore arm, the outside of thigh, and the

tail-tuft are all black.

The color of the shoulder, the side, and upper part of the hind quarter

is a peculiar smoky brown ("broccoli brown" of Ridgway), having in

connection with the darker browns of the other parts a peculiar faded

appearance, quite as if it were due to the bleaching power of the sun.

On the fore quarters there is none of the bright straw color so

characteristic of the adult animal. Along the top of the neck and

shoulders, however, this color has at last begun to show faintly. The

hair on the body is quite luxuriant, both in length and density, in both

respects quite equaling, if not even surpassing, that of the finest

adults. For example, the hair on the side of the mounted yearling in the

Museum group has a length of 2 to 21/2 inches, while that on the same

region of the adult bull, whose pelage is particularly fine, is recorded

as being 2 inches only.

The horn is a straight, conical spike from 4 to 6 inches long, according

to age, and perfectly black. The legs are proportionally longer and

larger in the joints than those of the full-grown animal. The

countenance of the yearling is quite interesting. The sleepy, helpless,

innocent expression of the very young calf has given place to a

wide-awake, mischievous look, and he seems ready to break away and run

at a second's notice.

The measurements of the yearling in the Museum group are as follows:

+----------------------------------------------------------------+

|BISON AMERICANUS. (Male yearling, taken Oct. 31, 1886. Montana.)|

+----------------------------------------------------------------+

| (\_No. 15694, National Museum collection.\_) |

+----------------------------------------------------------------+

| | Feet.| Inches. |

|Height at shoulders | 3 | 5 |

|Length, head and body to insertion of tail | 5 | |

|Depth of chest | 1 | 11 |

|Depth of flank | 1 | 1 |

|Girth behind fore leg | 4 | 3 |

|From base of horns around end of nose | 2 | 11/2 |

|Length of tail vertebræ | | 10 |

+----------------------------------------------------------------+

6. \_The Spike Bull.\_--In hunters' parlance, the male buffalo between the

"yearling" age and four years is called a "spike" bull, in recognition

of the fact that up to the latter period the horn is a spike, either

perfectly straight, or with a curve near its base, and a straight point

the rest of the way up. The curve of the horn is generally hidden in

the hair, and the only part visible is the straight, terminal spike.

Usually the spike points diverge from each other, but often they are

parallel, and also perpendicular. In the fourth year, however, the

points of the horns begin to curve inward toward each other, describing

equal arcs of the same circle, as if they were going to meet over the

top of the head.

In the handsome young "spike" bull in the Museum group, the hair on the

shoulders has begun to take on the length, the light color, and tufted

appearance of the adult, beginning at the highest point of the hump and

gradually spreading. Immediately back of this light patch the hair is

long, but dark and woolly in appearance. The leg tufts have doubled in

length, and reveal the character of the growth that may be finally

expected. The beard has greatly lengthened, as also has the hair upon

the bridge of the nose, the forehead, ears, jaws, and all other portions

of the head except the cheeks.

The "spike" period of a buffalo is a most interesting one. Like a

seventeen-year-old boy, the young bull shows his youth in so many ways

it is always conspicuous, and his countenance is so suggestive of a

half-bearded youth it fixes the interest to a marked degree. He is

active, alert, and suspicious, and when he makes up his mind to run the

hunter may as well give up the chase.

By a strange fatality, our spike bull appears to be the only one in any

museum, or even in preserved existence, as far as can be ascertained.

Out of the twenty-five buffaloes killed and preserved by the Smithsonian

expedition, ten of which were adult bulls, this specimen was the only

male between the yearling and the adult ages. An effort to procure

another entire specimen of this age from Texas yielded only two spike

heads. It is to be sincerely regretted that more specimens representing

this very interesting period of the buffalo's life have not been

preserved, for it is now too late to procure wild specimens.

The following are the post-mortem dimensions of our specimen:

+---------------------------------------------------------------+

| BISON AMERICANUS. |

+---------------------------------------------------------------+

|("Spike" bull, two years old; taken October 14, 1886. Montana.)|

+---------------------------------------------------------------+

| (\_No. 15685, National Museum collection.\_) |

+---------------------------------------------------------------+

| | Feet.| Inches. |

|Height at shoulders | 4 | 2 |

|Length, head and body to insertion of tail | 7 | 7 |

|Depth of chest | 2 | 3 |

|Depth of flank | 1 | 7 |

|Girth behind fore leg | 6 | 8 |

|From base of horns around end of nose | 2 | 81/2 |

|Length of tail vertebræ | 1 | |

+---------------------------------------------------------------+

7. \_The Adult Bull.\_--In attempting to describe the adult male in the

National Museum group, it is difficult to decide which feature is most

prominent, the massive, magnificent head, with its shaggy frontlet and

luxuriant black beard, or the lofty hump, with its showy covering of

straw-yellow hair, in thickly-growing locks 4 inches long. But the head

is irresistible in its claims to precedence.

[Illustration: SPIKE BULL. From the group in the National Museum.

Reproduced from the \_Cosmopolitan Magazine\_, by permission of the

publishers.]

It must be observed at this point that in many respects this animal is

an exceptionally fine one. In actual size of frame, and in quantity and

quality of pelage, it is far superior to the average, even of wild

buffaloes when they were most numerous and at their best.[30] In one

respect, however, that of actual bulk, it is believed that this specimen

may have often been surpassed. When buffaloes were numerous, and not

required to do any great amount of running in order to exist, they were,

in the autumn months, very fat. Audubon says: "A large bison bull will

generally weigh nearly 2,000 pounds, and a fat cow about 1,200 pounds.

We weighed one of the bulls killed by our party, and found it to reach

1,727 pounds, although it had already lost a good deal of blood. This

was an old bull, and not fat. It had probably weighed more at some

previous period."[31] Our specimen when killed (by the writer, December

6, 1886) was in full vigor, superbly muscled, and well fed, but he

carried not a single pound of fat. For years the never-ceasing race for

life had utterly prevented the secretion of useless and cumbersome fat,

and his "subsistence" had gone toward the development of useful muscle.

Having no means by which to weigh him, we could only estimate his

weight, in which I called for the advice of my cowboys, all of whom were

more or less familiar with the weight of range cattle, and one I

regarded as an expert. At first the estimated weight of the animal was

fixed at 1,700 pounds, but with a constitutional fear of estimating over

the truth, I afterward reduced it to 1,600 pounds. This I am now well

convinced was an error, for I believe the first figure to have been

nearer the truth.

[Note 30: In testimony whereof the following extract from a letter

written by General Stewart Van Vliet, on March 10, 1897, to Professor

Baird, is of interest:

"MY DEAR PROFESSOR: On the receipt of your letter of the 6th instant I

saw General Sheridan, and yesterday we called on your taxidermist and

examined the buffalo bull he is setting up for the Museum. I don't think

I have ever seen a more splendid specimen in my life. General Sheridan

and I have seen millions of buffalo on the plains in former times. I

have killed hundreds, but I never killed a larger animal than the one in

the possession of your taxidermist."]

[Note 31: Quadrupeds of North America, vol. II, p. 44.]

In mounting the skin of this animal, we endeavored by every means in our

power, foremost of which were three different sets of measurements,

taken from the dead animal, one set to check another, to reproduce him

when mounted in exactly the same form he possessed in life--muscular,

but not fat.

The color of the body and hindquarters of a buffalo is very peculiar,

and almost baffles intelligent description. Audubon calls it "between a

dark umber and liver-shining brown." I once saw a competent artist

experiment with his oil-colors for a quarter of an hour before he

finally struck the combination which exactly matched the side of our

large bull. To my eyes, the color is a pale gray-brown or smoky gray.

The range of individual variation is considerable, some being uniformly

darker than the average type, and others lighter. While the under parts

of most adults are dark brown or blackish brown, others are actually

black. The hair on the body and hinder parts is fine, wavy on the

outside, and woolly underneath, and very dense. Add to this the

thickness of the skin itself, and the combination forms a covering that

is almost impervious to cold.

The entire fore quarter region, \_e. g.\_, the shoulders, the hump, and

the upper part of the neck, is covered with a luxuriant growth of pale

yellow hair (Naples yellow + yellow ocher), which stands straight out in

a dense mass, disposed in handsome tufts. The hair is somewhat woolly in

its nature, and the ends are as even as if the whole mass had lately

been gone over with shears and carefully clipped. This hair is 4 inches

in length. As the living animal moved his head from side to side, the

hair parted in great vertical furrows, so deep that the skin itself

seemed almost in sight. As before remarked, to comb this hair would

utterly destroy its naturalness, and it should never be done under any

circumstances. Standing as it does between the darker hair of the body

on one side and the almost black mass of the head on the other, this

light area is rendered doubly striking and conspicuous by contrast. It

not only covers the shoulders, but extends back upon the thorax, where

it abruptly terminates on a line corresponding to the sixth rib.

From the shoulder-joint downward, the color shades gradually into a dark

brown until at the knee it becomes quite black. The huge fore-arm is

lost in a thick mass of long, coarse, and rather straight hair 10 inches

in length. This growth stops abruptly at the knee, but it hangs within 6

inches of the hoof. The front side of this mass is blackish brown, but

it rapidly shades backward and downward into jet-black.

The hair on the top of the head lies in a dense, matted mass, forming a

perfect crown of rich brown (burnt sienna) locks, 16 inches in length,

hanging over the eyes, almost enveloping both horns, and spreading back

in rich, dark masses upon the light-colored neck.

On the cheeks the hair is of the same blackish brown color, but

comparatively short, and lies in beautiful waves. On the bridge of the

nose the hair is about 6 inches in length and stands out in a thick,

uniform, very curly mass, which always looks as if it had just been

carefully combed.

Immediately around the nose and mouth the hair is very short, straight

and stiff, and lies close to the skin, which leaves the nostrils and

lips fully exposed. The front part of the chin is similarly clad, and

its form is perfectly flat, due to the habit of the animal in feeding

upon the short, crisp buffalo grass, in the course of which the chin is

pressed flat against the ground. The end of the muzzle is very massive,

measuring 2 feet 2 inches in circumference just back of the nostrils.

The hair of the chin-beard is coarse, perfectly straight, jet black, and

111/2 inches in length on our old bull.

Occasionally a bull is met with who is a genuine Esau amongst his kind.

I once saw a bull, of medium size but fully adult, whose hair was a

wonder to behold. I have now in my possession a small lock of hair which

I plucked from his forehead, and its length is 221/2 inches. His horns

were entirely concealed by the immense mass of long hair that nature had

piled upon his head, and his beard was as luxuriant as his frontlet.

[Illustration: BULL BUFFALO IN NATIONAL MUSEUM GROUP. Drawn by Ernest E.

Thompson.]

The nostril opening is large and wide. The color of the hairless

portions of the nose and mouth is shiny Vandyke brown and black, with a

strong tinge of bluish-purple, but this latter tint is not noticeable

save upon close examination, and the eyelid is the same. The iris is of

an irregular pear-shaped outline, 1-5/16 inches in its longest diameter,

very dark, reddish brown in color, with a black edging all around it.

Ordinarily no portion of the white eyeball is visible, but the broad

black band surrounding the iris, and a corner patch of white, is

frequently shown by the turning of the eye. The tongue is bluish purple,

as are the lips inside.

The hoofs and horns are, in reality, jet black throughout, but the horn

often has at the base a scaly, dead appearance on the outside, and as

the wrinkles around the base increase with age and scale up and gather

dirt, that part looks gray. The horns of bulls taken in their prime are

smooth, glossy black, and even look as if they had been half polished

with oil.

As the bull increases in age, the outer layers of the horn begin to

break off at the tip and pile up one upon another, until the horn has

become a thick, blunt stub, with only the tip of what was once a neat

and shapely point showing at the end. The bull is then known as a

"stub-horn," and his horns increase in roughness and unsightliness as he

grows older. From long rubbing on the earth, the outer curve of each

horn is gradually worn flat, which still further mars its symmetry.

The horns serve as a fair index of the age of a bison. After he is three

years old, the bison adds each year a ring around the base of his horns,

the same as domestic cattle. If we may judge by this, the horn begins to

break when the bison is about ten or eleven years old, and the stubbing

process gradually continues during the rest of his life. Judging by the

teeth, and also the oldest horns I have seen, I am of the opinion that

the natural life time of the bison is about twenty-five years; certainly

no less.

+--------------------------------------------------------+

| BISON AMERICANUS. |

| (Male, eleven years old. |

| Taken December 6, 1866. Montana.) |

| (\_No. 15703, National Museum collection.\_) |

+--------------------------------------------------------+

| |Feet.|Inches.|

|Height at shoulders to the skin | 5 | 8 |

|Height at shoulders to top of hair | 6 | -- |

|Length, head and body to insertion of tail| 10 | 2 |

|Depth of chest | 3 | 10 |

|Depth of flank | 2 | 0 |

|Girth behind fore leg | 8 | 4 |

|From base of horns around end of nose | 3 | 6 |

|Length of tail vertebræ | 1 | 3 |

|Circumference of muzzle back of nostrils | 2 | 2 |

+--------------------------------------------------------+

8. \_The Cow in the third year.\_--The young cow of course possesses the

same youthful appearance already referred to as characterizing the

"spike" bull. The hair on the shoulders has begun to take on the light

straw-color, and has by this time attained a length which causes it to

arrange itself in tufts, or locks. The body colors have grown darker,

and reached their permanent tone. Of course the hair on the head has by

no means attained its full length, and the head is not at all handsome.

The horns are quite small, but the curve is well defined, and they

distinctly mark the sex of the individual, even at the beginning of the

third year.

+------------------------------------------------------------+

| BISON AMERICANUS. |

|(Young cow, in third year. Taken October 14, 1886. Montana.)|

+------------------------------------------------------------+

| (\_No. 15686, National Museum collection.\_) |

+------------------------------------------------------------+

| |Feet.| Inches. |

|Height at shoulders | 4 | 5 |

|Length, head and body to insertion of tail| 7 | 7 |

|Depth of chest | 2 | 4 |

|Depth of flank | 1 | 4 |

|Girth behind fore leg | 5 | 4 |

|From base of horns around end of nose | 2 | 81/2 |

|Length of tail vertebræ | 1 | .. |

+------------------------------------------------------------+

9. \_The adult Cow.\_--The upper body color of the adult cow in the

National Museum group (see Plate) is a rich, though not intense, Vandyke

brown, shading imperceptibly down the sides into black, which spreads

over the entire under parts and inside of the thighs. The hair on the

lower joints of the leg is in turn lighter, being about the same shade

as that on the loins. The fore-arm is concealed in a mass of almost

black hair, which gradually shades lighter from the elbow upward and

along the whole region of the humerus. On the shoulder itself the hair

is pale yellow or straw-color (Naples yellow + yellow ocher), which

extends down in a point toward the elbow. From the back of the head a

conspicuous baud of curly, dark-brown hair extends back like a mane

along the neck and to the top of the hump, beyond which it soon fades

out.

The hair on the head is everywhere a rich burnt-sienna brown, except

around the corners of the mouth, where it shades into black.

The horns of the cow bison are slender, but solid for about two-thirds

of their length from the tip, ringed with age near their base, and quite

black. Very often they are imperfect in shape, and out of every five

pairs at least one is generally misshapen. Usually one horn is

"crumpled," \_e. g.\_, dwarfed in length and unnaturally thickened at the

base, and very often one horn is found to be merely an unsightly,

misshapen stub.

[Illustration: From a photograph. Engraved by Frederick Juengling. BULL

BUFFALO. (REAR VIEW.) Reproduced from the \_Cosmopolitan Magazine\_, by

permission of the publishers.]

The udder of the cow bison is very small, as might be expected of an

animal which must do a great deal of hard traveling, but the milk is

said to be very rich. Some authorities declare that it requires the

milk of two domestic cows to satisfy one buffalo calf, but this, I

think, is an error. Our calf began in May to consume 6 quarts of

domestic milk daily, which by June 10 had increased to 8, and up to July

10, 9 quarts was the utmost it could drink. By that time it began to eat

grass, but the quantity of milk disposed of remained about the same.

+---------------------------------------------------------------+

| BISON AMERICANUS. |

|(Adult cow, eight years old. Taken November 18, 1886. Montana.)|

+---------------------------------------------------------------+

| (\_No. 15767, National Museum collection.\_) |

+---------------------------------------------------------------+

| | Feet.| Inches. |

|Height at shoulders | 4 | 10 |

|Length, head and body to insertion of tail| 8 | 6 |

|Depth of chest | 3 | 7 |

|Depth of flank | 1 | 7 |

|Girth behind fore leg | 6 | 10 |

|From base of horns around end of nose | 3 | |

|Length of tail vertebræ | 1 | |

+---------------------------------------------------------------+

10. \_The "Wood," or "Mountain" Buffalo.\_--Having myself never seen a

specimen of the so called "mountain buffalo" or "wood buffalo," which

some writers accord the rank of a distinct variety, I can only quote the

descriptions of others. While most Rocky Mountain hunters consider the

bison of the mountains quite distinct from that of the plains, it must

be remarked that no two authorities quite agree in regard to the

distinguishing characters of the variety they recognize. Colonel Dodge

states that "His body is lighter, whilst his legs are shorter, but much

thicker and stronger, than the plains animal, thus enabling him to

perform feats of climbing and tumbling almost incredible in such a huge

and unwieldy beast."[32]

[Note 32: Plains of the Great West, p. 144.]

The belief in the existence of a distinct mountain variety is quite

common amongst hunters and frontiersmen all along the eastern slope the

Rocky Mountains as far north as the Peace River. In this connection the

following from Professor Henry Youle Hind[33] is of general interest:

[Note 33: Red River, Assinniboine and Saskatchewan Expedition, II p.

104-105.]

"The existence of two kinds of buffalo is firmly believed by many

hunters at Red River; they are stated to be the prairie buffalo and the

buffalo of the woods. Many old hunters with whom I have conversed on

this subject aver that the so-called wood buffalo is a distinct species,

and although they are not able to offer scientific proofs, yet the

difference in size, color, hair, and horns, are enumerated as the

evidence upon which they base their statement. Men from their youth

familiar with these animals in the great plains, and the varieties which

are frequently met with in large herds, still cling to this opinion. The

buffalo of the plains are not always of the dark and rich bright brown

which forms their characteristic color. They are sometimes seen from

white to almost black, and a gray buffalo is not at all uncommon.

Buffalo emasculated by wolves are often found on the prairies, where

they grow to an immense size; the skin of the buffalo ox is recognized

by the shortness of the wool and by its large dimensions. The skin of

the so-called wood buffalo is much larger than that of the common

animal, the hair is very short, mane or hair about the neck short and

soft, and altogether destitute of curl, which is the common feature in

the hair or wool of the prairie animal. Two skins of the so-called wood

buffalo, which I saw at Selkirk Settlement, bore a very close

resemblance to the skin of the Lithuanian bison, judging from the

specimens of that species which I have since had an opportunity of

seeing in the British Museum.

"The wood buffalo is stated to be very scarce, and only found north of

the Saskatchewan and on the flanks of the Rocky Mountains. It never

ventures into the open plains. The prairie buffalo, on the contrary,

generally avoids the woods in summer and keeps to the open country; but

in winter they are frequently found in the woods of the Little Souris,

Saskatchewan, the Touchwood Hills, and the aspen groves on the

Qu'Appelle. There is no doubt that formerly the prairie buffalo ranged

through open woods almost as much as he now does through the prairies."

Mr. Harrison S. Young, an officer of the Hudson's Bay Fur Company,

stationed at Fort Edmonton, writes me as follows in a letter dated

October 22, 1887: "In our district of Athabasca, along the Salt River,

there are still a few wood buffalo killed every year; but they are fast

diminishing in numbers, and are also becoming very shy."

In Prof. John Macoun's "Manitoba and the Great Northwest," page 342,

there occurs the following reference to the wood buffalo: "In the winter

of 1870 the last buffalo were killed north of Peace River; but in 1875

about one thousand head were still in existence between the Athabasca

and Peace Rivers, north of Little Slave Lake. These are called wood

buffalo by the hunters, but diner only in size from those of the plain."

In the absence of facts based on personal observations, I may be

permitted to advance an opinion in regard to the wood buffalo. There is

some reason for the belief that certain changes of form may have taken

place in the buffaloes that have taken up a permanent residence in

rugged and precipitous mountain regions. Indeed, it is hardly possible

to understand how such a radical change in the habitat of an animal

could fail, through successive generations, to effect certain changes in

the animal itself. It seems to me that the changes which would take

place in a band of plains buffaloes transferred to a permanent mountain

habitat can be forecast with a marked degree of certainty. The changes

that take place under such conditions in cattle, swine, and goats are

well known, and similar causes would certainly produce similar results

in the buffalo.

The scantier feed of the mountains, and the great waste of vital energy

called for in procuring it, would hardly produce a larger buffalo than

the plains-fed animal, who acquires an abundance of daily food of the

best quality with but little effort.

We should expect to see the mountain buffalo smaller in body than the

plains animal, with better leg development, and particularly with

stronger hind quarters. The pelvis of the plains buffalo is surprisingly

small and weak for so large an animal. Beyond question, constant

mountain climbing is bound to develop a maximum of useful muscle and

bone and a minimum of useless fat. If the loss of mane sustained by the

African lions who live in bushy localities may be taken as an index, we

should expect the bison of the mountains, especially the "wood buffalo,"

to lose a great deal of his shaggy frontlet and mane on the bushes and

trees which surrounded him. Therefore, we would naturally expect to find

the hair on those parts shorter and in far less perfect condition than

on the bison of the treeless prairies. By reason of the more shaded

condition of his home, and the decided mitigation of the sun's

fierceness, we should also expect to see his entire pelage of a darker

tone. That he would acquire a degree of agility and strength unknown in

his relative of the plain is reasonably certain. In the course of many

centuries the change in his form might become well defined, constant,

and conspicuous; but at present there is apparently not the slightest

ground for considering that the "mountain buffalo" or "wood buffalo" is

entitled to rank even as a variety of \_Bison americanus\_.

Colonel Dodge has recorded some very interesting information in regard

to the "mountain, or wood buffalo," which deserves to be quoted

entire.[34]

[Note 34: Plains of the Great West, p. 144-147.]

"In various portions of the Rocky Mountains, especially in the region of

the parks, is found an animal which old mountaineers call the 'bison.'

This animal bears about the same relation to a plains buffalo as a

sturdy mountain pony does to an American horse. His body is lighter,

whilst his legs are shorter, but much thicker and stronger, than the

plains animal, thus enabling him to perform feats of climbing and

tumbling almost incredible in such a huge and apparently unwieldy beast.

"These animals are by no means plentiful, and are moreover excessively

shy, inhabiting the deepest, darkest defiles, or the craggy, almost

precipitous, sides of mountains inaccessible to any but the most

practiced mountaineers.

"From the tops of the mountains which rim the parks the rains of ages

have cut deep gorges, which plunge with brusque abruptness, but

nevertheless with great regularity, hundreds or even thousands of feet

to the valley below. Down the bottom of each such gorge a clear, cold

stream of purest water, fertilizing a narrow belt of a few feet of

alluvial, and giving birth and growth, to a dense jungle of spruce,

quaking asp, and other mountain trees. One side of the gorge is

generally a thick forest of pine, while the other side is a meadow-like

park, covered with splendid grass. Such gorges are the favorite haunt of

the mountain buffalo. Early in the morning he enjoys a bountiful

breakfast of the rich nutritious grasses, quenches his thirst with the

finest water, and, retiring just within the line of jungle, where,

himself unseen, he can scan the open, he crouches himself in the long

grass and reposes in comfort and security until appetite calls him to

his dinner late in the evening. Unlike their plains relative, there is

no stupid staring at an intruder. At the first symptom of danger they

disappear like magic in the thicket, and never stop until far removed

from even the apprehension of pursuit. I have many times come upon their

fresh tracks, upon the beds from which they had first sprung in alarm,

but I have never even seen one.

"I have wasted much time and a great deal of wind in vain endeavors to

add one of these animals to my bag. My figure is no longer adapted to

mountain climbing, and the possession of a bison's head of my own

killing is one of my blighted hopes.

"Several of my friends have been more fortunate, but I know of no

sportsman who has bagged more than one.[35]

[Note 35: Foot-note by William Blackmore: "The author is in error here,

as in a point of the Tarryall range of mountains, between Pike's Peak

and the South Park, in the autumn of 1871, two mountain buffaloes were

killed in one afternoon. The skin of the finer was presented to Dr.

Frank Buckland."]

"Old mountaineers and trappers have given me wonderful accounts of the

number of these animals in all the mountain region 'many years ago;' and

I have been informed by them, that their present rarity is due to the

great snow-storm of 1844-'45, of which I have already spoken as

destroying the plains buffalo in the Laramie country.

"One of my friends, a most ardent and pertinacious sportsman, determined

on the possession of a bison's head, and, hiring a guide, plunged into

the mountain wilds which separate the Middle from South Park. After

several days fresh tracks were discovered. Turning their horses loose on

a little gorge park, such as described, they started on foot on the

trail; for all that day they toiled and scrambled with the utmost

caution--now up, now down, through deep and narrow gorges and pine

thickets, over bare and rocky crags, sleeping where night overtook them.

Betimes next morning they pushed on the trail, and about 11 o'clock,

when both were exhausted and well-nigh disheartened, their route was

intercepted by a precipice. Looking over, they descried, on a projecting

ledge several hundred feet below, a herd of about 20 bisons lying down.

The ledge was about 300 feet at widest, by probably 1,000 feet long. Its

inner boundary was the wall of rock on the top of which they stood; its

outer appeared to be a sheer precipice of at least 200 feet. This ledge

was connected with the slope of the mountain by a narrow neck. The wind

being right, the hunters succeeded in reaching this neck unobserved. My

friend selected a magnificent head, that of a fine bull, young but full

grown, and both fired. At the report the bisons all ran to the far end

of the ledge and plunged over.

"Terribly disappointed, the hunters ran to the spot, and found that they

had gone down a declivity, not actually a precipice, but so steep that

the hunters could not follow them.

"At the foot lay a bison. A long, a fatiguing detour brought them to the

spot, and in the animal lying dead before him my friend recognized his

bull--his first and last mountain buffalo. Hone but a true sportsman can

appreciate his feelings.

"The remainder of the herd was never seen after the great plunge, down

which it is doubtful if even a dog could have followed unharmed."

In the issue of Forest and Stream of June 14, 1888, Dr. R. W. Shufeldt,

in an article entitled "The American Buffalo," relates a very

interesting experience with buffaloes which were pronounced to be of the

"mountain" variety, and his observations on the animals are well worth

reproducing here. The animals (eight in number) were encountered on the

northern slope of the Big Horn Mountains, in the autumn of 1877. "We

came upon them during a fearful blizzard of heavy hail, during which our

animals could scarcely retain their feet. In fact, the packer's mule

absolutely lay down on the ground rather than risk being blown down the

mountain side, and my own horse, totally unable to face such a violent

blow and the pelting hail (the stones being as large as big marbles),

positively stood stock-still, facing an old buffalo bull that was not

more than 25 feet in front of me. \* \* \* Strange to say, this fearful

gust did not last more than ten minutes, when it stopped as suddenly as

it had commenced, and I deliberately killed my old buffalo at one shot,

just where he stood, and, separating two other bulls from the rest,

charged them down a rugged ravine. They passed over this and into

another one, but with less precipitous sides and no trees in the way,

and when I was on top of the intervening ridge I noticed that the

largest bull had halted in the bottom. Checking my horse, an excellent

buffalo hunter, I fired down at him without dismounting. The ball merely

barked his shoulder, and to my infinite surprise he turned and charged

me up the hill. \* \* \* Stepping to one side of my horse, with the

charging and infuriated bull not 10 feet to my front, I fired upon him,

and the heavy ball took him square in the chest, bringing him to his

knees, with a gush of scarlet blood from his mouth and nostrils. \* \* \*

"Upon examining the specimen, I found it to be an old bull, apparently

smaller and very much blacker than the ones I had seen killed on the

plains only a day or so before. Then I examined the first one I had

shot, as well as others which were killed by the packer from the same

bunch, and I came to the conclusion that they were typical

representatives of the variety known as the 'mountain buffalo,' a form

much more active in movement, of slighter limbs, blacker, and far more

dangerous to attack. My opinion in the premises remains unaltered

to-day. In all this I may be mistaken, but it was also the opinion held

by the old buffalo hunter who accompanied me, and who at once remarked

when he saw them that they were 'mountain buffalo,' and not the plains

variety. \* \* \*

"These specimens were not actually measured by me in either case, and

their being considered smaller only rested upon my judging them by my

eye. But they were of a softer pelage, black, lighter in limb, and when

discovered were in the timber, on the side of the Big Horn Mountains."

The band of bison in the Yellowstone Park must, of necessity, be of the

so-called "wood" or "mountain" variety, and if by any chance one of its

members ever dies of old age, it is to be hoped its skin may be

carefully preserved and sent to the National Museum to throw some

further light on this question.

11. \_The shedding of the winter pelage.\_--In personal appearance the

buffalo is subject to striking, and even painful, variations, and the

estimate an observer forms of him is very apt to depend upon the time of

the year at which the observation is made. Toward the end of the winter

the whole coat has become faded and bleached by the action of the sun,

wind, snow, and rain, until the freshness of its late autumn colors has

totally disappeared. The bison takes on a seedy, weathered, and rusty

look. But this is not a circumstance to what happens to him a little

later. Promptly with the coming of the spring, if not even in the last

week of February, the buffalo begins the shedding of his winter coat. It

is a long and difficult task, and with commendable energy he sets about

it at the earliest possible moment. It lasts him more than half the

year, and is attended with many positive discomforts.

The process of shedding is accomplished in two ways: by the new hair

growing into and forcing off the old, and by the old hair falling off in

great patches, leaving the skin bare. On the heavily-haired

portions--the head, neck, fore quarters, and hump--the old hair stops

growing, dies, and the new hair immediately starts through the skin and

forces it off. The new hair grows so rapidly, and at the same time so

densely, that it forces itself into the old, becomes hopelessly

entangled with it, and in time actually lifts the old hair clear of the

skin. On the head the new hair is dark brown or black, but on the neck,

fore quarters, and hump it has at first, and indeed until it is 2 inches

in length, a peculiar gray or drab color, mixed with brown, totally

different from its final and natural color. The new hair starts first on

the head, but the actual shedding of the old hair is to be seen first

along the lower parts of the neck and between the fore legs. The

heavily-haired parts are never bare, but, on the contrary, the amount of

hair upon them is about the same all the year round. The old and the new

hair cling together with provoking tenacity long after the old coat

should fall, and on several of the bulls we killed in October there were

patches of it still sticking tightly to the shoulders, from which it

had to be forcibly plucked away. Under all such patches the new hair was

of a different color from that around them.

The other process of shedding takes place on the body and hind quarters,

from which the old hair loosens and drops off in great woolly flakes a

foot square, more or less. The shedding takes place very unevenly, the

old hair remaining much longer in some places than in others. During

April, May, and June the body and hind quarters present a most ludicrous

and even pitiful spectacle. The island-like patches of persistent old

hair alternating with patches of bare brown skin are adorned (?) by

great ragged streamers of loose hair, which flutter in the wind like

signals of distress. Whoever sees a bison at this period is filled with

a desire to assist nature by plucking off the flying streamers of old

hair; but the bison never permits anything of the kind, however good

one's intentions may be. All efforts to dislodge the old hair are

resisted to the last extremity, and the buffalo generally acts as if the

intention were to deprive him of his skin itself. By the end of June, if

not before, the body and hind quarters are free from the old hair, and

as bare as the hide of a hippopotamus. The naked skin has a shiny brown

appearance, and of course the external anatomy of the animal is very

distinctly revealed. But for the long hair on the fore quarters, neck,

and head the bison would lose all his dignity of appearance with his

hair. As it is, the handsome black head, which is black with new hair as

early as the first of May, redeems the animal from utter homeliness.

After the shedding of the body hair, the naked skin of the buffalo is

burned by the sun and bitten by flies until he is compelled to seek a

pool of water, or even a bed of soft mud, in which to roll and make

himself comfortable. He wallows, not so much because he is so fond of

either water or mud, but in self-defense; and when he emerges from his

wallow, plastered with mud from head to tail, his degradation is

complete. He is then simply not fit to be seen, even by his best

friends.

By the first of October, a complete and wonderful transformation has

taken place. The buffalo stands forth clothed in a complete new suit of

hair, fine, clean, sleek, and bright in color, not a speck of dirt nor a

lock awry anywhere. To be sure, it is as yet a trifle short on the body,

where it is not over an inch in length, and hardly that; but it is

growing rapidly and getting ready for winter.

From the 20th of November to the 20th of December the pelage is at its

very finest. By the former date it has attained its full growth, its

colors are at their brightest, and nothing has been lost either by the

elements or by accidental causes. To him who sees an adult bull at this

period, or near it, the grandeur of the animal is irresistibly felt.

After seeing buffaloes of all ages in the spring and summer months the

contrast afforded by those seen in October, November, and December was

most striking and impressive. In the later period, as different

individuals were wounded and brought to bay at close quarters, their

hair was so clean and well-kept, that more than once I was led to

exclaim: "He looks as if he had just been combed."

It must be remarked, however, that the long hair of the head and fore

quarters is disposed in locks or tufts, and to comb it in reality would

utterly destroy its natural and characteristic appearance.

Inasmuch as the pelage of the domesticated bison, the only

representatives of the species which will be found alive ten years

hence, will in all likelihood develop differently from that of the wild

animal, it may some time in the future be of interest to know the

length, by careful measurement, of the hair found on carefully-selected

typical wild specimens. To this end the following measurements are

given. It must be borne in mind that these specimens were not chosen

because their pelage was particularly luxuriant, but rather because they

are fine average specimens.

The hair of the adult bull is by no means as long as I have seen on a

bison, although perhaps not many have greatly surpassed it. It is with

the lower animals as with man--the length of the hairy covering is an

individual character only. I have in my possession a tuft of hair, from

the frontlet of a rather small bull bison, which measures 221/2 inches

in length. The beard on the specimen from which this came was

correspondingly long, and the entire pelage was of wonderful length and

density.

LENGTH OF THE HAIR OF BISON AMERICANUS.

[Measurements, in inches, of the pelage of the specimens composing the

group in the National Museum.]

+-----------------------------------------------------------------------+

| |Old |Old |Spike |Young |Yearling|Young |

| |bull, |cow, |bull, |cow, |calf, |calf, |

| |killed |killed |killed |killed |killed |four |

| |Dec. 6.|Nov. 18.|Oct. 14.|Oct. 14.|Oct. 31.|months|

|Length of: | | | | | |old. |

+--------------------+-------+--------+--------+--------+--------+------+

|hair on the shoulder| | | | | | |

|(over scapula) | 33/4 | 43/4 | 31/2 | 31/4 | 3 | 11/2 |

+--------------------+-------+--------+--------+--------+--------+------+

|hair on top of hump | 61/2 | 7 | 51/4 | 51/2 | 41/2 | 2 |

+--------------------+-------+--------+--------+--------+--------+------+

|hair on the middle | | | | | | |

|of the side | 2 | 11/2 | 21/2 | 11/2 | 21/4 | 11/4 |

+--------------------+-------+--------+--------+--------+--------+------+

|hair on the | | | | | | |

|hind quarter | 13/4 | 11/4 | 3/4 | 3/4 | 2 | 1 |

+--------------------+-------+--------+--------+--------+--------+------+

|hair on the | | | | | | |

|forehead | 16 | 81/2 | 61/2 | 5 | 31/2 | 1/2 |

+--------------------+-------+--------+--------+--------+--------+------+

|the chin beard | 111/2 | 91/2 | 63/4 | 5 | 5 | 0 |

+--------------------+-------+--------+--------+--------+--------+------+

|the breast tuft | 8 | 81/2 | 8 | 6 | 5 | 3 |

+--------------------+-------+--------+--------+--------+--------+------+

|tuft on fore leg | 101/2 | 8 | 8 | 41/2 | 3 | 11/2 |

+--------------------+-------+--------+--------+--------+--------+------+

|the tail tuft | 19 | 15 | 15 | 13 | 71/2 | 41/2 |

+-----------------------------------------------------------------------+

\_Albinism.\_--Cases of albinism in the buffalo were of extremely rare

occurrence. I have met many old buffalo hunters, who had killed

thousands and seen scores of thousands of buffaloes, yet never had seen

a white one. From all accounts it appears that not over ten or eleven

white buffaloes, or white buffalo skins, were ever seen by white men.

Pied individuals were occasionally obtained, but even they were rare.

Albino buffaloes were always so highly prized that not a single one, so

far as I can learn, ever had the good fortune to attain adult size,

their appearance being so striking, in contrast with the other members

of the herd, as to draw upon them an unusual number of enemies, and

cause their speedy destruction.

At the New Orleans Exposition, in 1884-'85, the Territory of Dakota

exhibited, amongst other Western quadrupeds, the mounted skin of a

two-year-old buffalo which might fairly be called an albino. Although

not really white, it was of a uniform dirty cream-color, and showed not

a trace of the bison's normal color on any part of its body.

Lieut. Col. S. C. Kellogg, U. S. Army, has on deposit in the National

Museum a tanned skin which is said to have come from a buffalo. It is

from an animal about one year old, and the hair upon it, which is short,

very curly or wavy, and rather coarse, is pure white. In length and

texture the hair does not in any one respect resemble the hair of a

yearling buffalo save in one particular,--along the median line of the

neck and hump there is a rather long, thin mane of hair, which has the

peculiar woolly appearance of genuine buffalo hair on those parts. On

the shoulder portions of the skin the hair is as short as on the hind

quarters. I am inclined to believe this rather remarkable specimen came

from a wild half-breed calf, the result of a cross between a white

domestic cow and a buffalo bull. At one time it was by no means uncommon

for small bunches of domestic cattle to enter herds of buffalo and

remain there permanently.

I have been informed that the late General Marcy possessed a white

buffalo skin. If it is still in existence, and is really \_white\_, it is

to be hoped that so great a rarity may find a permanent abiding place in

some museum where the remains of \_Bison americanus\_ are properly

appreciated.

V. THE HABITS OF THE BUFFALO.

The history of the buffalo's daily life and habits should begin with the

"running season." This period occupied the months of August and

September, and was characterized by a degree of excitement and activity

throughout the entire herd quite foreign to the ease-loving and even

slothful nature which was so noticeable a feature of the bison's

character at all other times.

The mating season occurred when the herd was on its summer range. The

spring calves were from two to four months old. Through continued

feasting on the new crop of buffalo-grass and bunch-grass--the most

nutritious in the world, perhaps--every buffalo in the herd had grown

round-sided, fat, and vigorous. The faded and weather-beaten suit of

winter hair had by that time fallen off and given place to the new coat

of dark gray and black, and, excepting for the shortness of his hair,

the buffalo was in prime condition.

During the "running season," as it was called by the plainsmen, the

whole nature of the herd was completely changed. Instead of being broken

up into countless small groups and dispersed over a vast extent of

territory, the herd came together in a dense and confused mass of many

thousand individuals, so closely congregated as to actually blacken the

face of the landscape. As if by a general and irresistible impulse,

every straggler would be drawn to the common center, and for miles on

every side of the great herd the country would be found entirely

deserted.

At this time the herd itself became a seething mass of activity and

excitement. As usual under such conditions, the bulls were half the time

chasing the cows, and fighting each other during the other half. These

actual combats, which were always of short duration and over in a few

seconds after the actual collision took place, were preceded by the

usual threatening demonstrations, in which the bull lowers his head

until his nose almost touches the ground, roars like a fog-horn until

the earth seems to fairly tremble with the vibration, glares madly upon

his adversary with half-white eyeballs, and with his forefeet paws up

the dry earth and throws it upward in a great cloud of dust high above

his back. At such times the mingled roaring--it can not truthfully be

described as lowing or bellowing--of a number of huge bulls unite and

form a great volume of sound like distant thunder, which has often been

heard at a distance of from 1 to 3 miles. I have even been assured by

old plainsmen that under favorable atmospheric conditions such sounds

have been heard five miles.

Notwithstanding the extreme frequency of combats between the bulls

during this season, their results were nearly always harmless, thanks to

the thickness of the hair and hide on the head and shoulders, and the

strength of the neck.

Under no conditions was there ever any such thing as the pairing off or

mating of male and female buffaloes for any length of time. In the

entire process of reproduction the bison's habits were similar to those

of domestic cattle. For years the opinion was held by many, in some

cases based on misinterpreted observations, that in the herd the

identity of each family was partially preserved, and that each old bull

maintained an individual harem and group of progeny of his own. The

observations of Colonel Dodge completely disprove this very interesting

theory; for at best it was only a picturesque fancy, ascribing to the

bison a degree of intelligence which he never possessed.

At the close of the breeding season the herd quickly settles down to its

normal condition. The mass gradually resolves itself into the numerous

bands or herdlets of from twenty to a hundred individuals, so

characteristic of bison on their feeding grounds, and these gradually

scatter in search of the best grass until the herd covers many square

miles of country.

In his search for grass the buffalo displayed but little intelligence or

power of original thought. Instead of closely following the divides

between water courses where the soil was best and grass most abundant,

he would not hesitate to wander away from good feeding-grounds into

barren "bad lands," covered with sage-brush, where the grass was very

thin and very poor. In such broken country as Montana, Wyoming, and

southwestern Dakota, the herds, on reaching the best grazing grounds on

the divides, would graze there day after day until increasing thirst

compelled them to seek for water. Then, actuated by a common impulse,

the search for a water-hole was begun in a business-like way. The leader

of a herd, or "bunch," which post was usually filled by an old cow,

would start off down the nearest "draw," or stream-heading, and all the

rest would fall into line and follow her. From the moment this start was

made there was no more feeding, save as a mouthful of grass could be

snatched now and then without turning aside. In single file, in a line

sometimes half a mile long and containing between one and two hundred

buffaloes, the procession slowly marched down the coulée, close

alongside the gully as soon as the water-course began to cut a pathway

for itself. When the gully curved to right or left the leader would

cross its bed and keep straight on until the narrow ditch completed its

wayward curve and came back to the middle of the coulée. The trail of a

herd in search of water is usually as good a piece of engineering as

could be executed by the best railway surveyor, and is governed by

precisely the same principles. It always follows the level of the

valley, swerves around the high points, and crosses the stream

repeatedly in order to avoid climbing up from the level. The same trail

is used again and again by different herds until the narrow path, not

over a foot in width, is gradually cut straight down into the soil to a

depth of several inches, as if it had been done by a 12-inch

grooving-plane. By the time the trail has been worn down to a depth of 6

or 7 inches, without having its width increased in the least, it is no

longer a pleasant path to walk in, being too much like a narrow ditch.

Then the buffaloes abandon it and strike out a new one alongside, which

is used until it also is worn down and abandoned.

To day the old buffalo trails are conspicuous among the very few classes

of objects which remain as a reminder of a vanished race. The herds of

cattle now follow them in single file just as the buffaloes did a few

years ago, as they search for water in the same way. In some parts of

the West, in certain situations, old buffalo trails exist which the wild

herds wore down to a depth of 2 feet or more.

Mile after mile marched the herd, straight down-stream, bound for the

upper water-hole. As the hot summer drew on, the pools would dry up one

by one, those nearest the source being the first to disappear. Toward

the latter part of summer, the journey for water was often a long one.

Hole after hole would be passed without finding a drop of water. At last

a hole of mud would be found, below that a hole with a little muddy

water, and a mile farther on the leader would arrive at a shallow pool

under the edge of a "cut bank," a white, snow-like deposit of alkali on

the sand encircling its margin, and incrusting the blades of grass and

rushed that grew up from the bottom. The damp earth around the pool was

cut up by a thousand hoof-prints, and the water was warm, strongly

impregnated with alkali, and yellow with animal impurities, but it was

\_water\_. The nauseous mixture was quickly surrounded by a throng of

thirsty, heated, and eager buffaloes of all ages, to which the oldest

and strongest asserted claims of priority. There was much crowding and

some fighting, but eventually all were satisfied. After such a long

journey to water, a herd would usually remain by it for some hours,

lying down, resting, and drinking at intervals until completely

satisfied.

Having drunk its fill, the herd would never march directly back to the

choice feeding grounds it had just left, but instead would leisurely

stroll off at a right angle from the course it came, cropping for awhile

the rich bunch grasses of the bottom-lands, and then wander across the

hills in an almost aimless search for fresh fields and pastures new.

When buffaloes remained long in a certain locality it was a common thing

for them to visit the same watering-place a number of times, at

intervals of greater or less duration, according to circumstances.

When undisturbed on his chosen range, the bison used to be fond of lying

down for an hour or two in the middle of the day, particularly when fine

weather and good grass combined to encourage him in luxurious habits. I

once discovered with the field glass a small herd of buffaloes lying

down at midday on the slope of a high ridge, and having ridden hard for

several hours we seized the opportunity to unsaddle and give our horses

an hour's rest before making the attack. While we were so doing, the

herd got up, shifted its position to the opposite side of the ridge, and

again laid down, every buffalo with his nose pointing to windward.

Old hunters declare that in the days of their abundance, when feeding on

their ranges in fancied security, the younger animals were as playful as

well-fed domestic calves. It was a common thing to see them cavort and

frisk around with about as much grace as young elephants, prancing and

running to and fro with tails held high in air "like scorpions."

Buffaloes are very fond of rolling in dry dirt or even in mud, and this

habit is quite strong in captive animals. Not only is it indulged in

during the shedding season, but all through the fall and winter. The two

live buffaloes in the National Museum are so much given to rolling, even

in rainy weather, that it is necessary to card them every few days to

keep them presentable.

Bulls are much more given to rolling than the cows, especially after

they have reached maturity. They stretch out at full length, rub their

heads violently to and fro on the ground, in which the horn serves as

the chief point of contact and slides over the ground like a

sled-runner. After thoroughly scratching one side on mother earth they

roll over and treat the other in like manner. Notwithstanding his sharp

and lofty hump, a buffalo bull can roll completely over with as much

ease as any horse.

The vast amount of rolling and side-scratching on the earth indulged in

by bull buffaloes is shown in the worn condition of the horns of every

old specimen. Often a thickness of half an inch is gone from the upper

half of each horn on its outside curve, at which point the horn is worn

quite flat. This is well illustrated in the horns shown in the

accompanying plate, fig. 6.

[Illustration: DEVELOPMENT OF THE HORNS OF THE AMERICAN BISON.

1. The Calf. 2. The Yearling. 3. Spike Bull, 2 years old.

4. Spike Bull, 3 years old. 5. Bull, 4 years old.

6. Bull, 11 years old. 7. Old "stub-horn" Bull, 20 years old.]

Mr. Catlin[36] affords some very interesting and valuable information in

regard to the bison's propensity for wollowing in mad, and also the

origin of the "fairy circles," which have caused so much speculation

amongst travelers:

[Note 36: North American Indians, vol. I, p. 249, 250.]

"In the heat of summer, these huge animals, which no doubt suffer very

much with the great profusion of their long and shaggy hair, or fur,

often graze on the low grounds of the prairies, where there is a little

stagnant water lying amongst the grass, and the ground underneath being

saturated with it, is soft, into which the enormous bull, lowered down

upon one knee, will plunge his horns, and at last his head, driving up

the earth, and soon making an excavation in the ground into which the

water filters from amongst the grass, forming for him in a few moments a

cool and comfortable bath, into which he plunges like a hog in his mire.

"In this delectable laver he throws himself flat upon his side, and

forcing himself violently around, with his horns and his huge hump on

his shoulders presented to the sides, he ploughs up the ground by his

rotary motion, sinking himself deeper and deeper in the ground,

continually enlarging his pool, in which he at length becomes nearly

immersed, and the water and mud about him mixed into a complete mortar,

which changes his color and drips in streams from every part of him as

he rises up upon his feet, a hideous monster of mud and ugliness, too

frightful and too eccentric to be described!

"It is generally the leader of the herd that takes upon him to make this

excavation, and if not (but another one opens the ground), the leader

(who is conqueror) marches forward, and driving the other from it

plunges himself into it; and, having cooled his sides and changed his

color to a walking mass of mud and mortar, he stands in the pool until

inclination induces him to step out and give place to the next in

command who stands ready, and another, and another, who advance forward

in their turns to enjoy the luxury of the wallow, until the whole band

(sometimes a hundred or more) will pass through it in turn,[37] each one

throwing his body around in a similar manner and each one adding a

little to the dimensions of the pool, while he carries away in his hair

an equal share of the clay, which dries to a gray or whitish color and

gradually falls off. By this operation, which is done perhaps in the

space of half an hour, a circular excavation of fifteen or twenty feet

in diameter and two feet in depth is completed and left for the water to

run into, which soon fills it to the level of the ground.

[Note 37: In the District of Columbia work-house we have a counterpart

of this in the public bath-tub, wherein forty prisoners were seen by a

\_Star\_ reporter to bathe one after another in the same water!]

"To these sinks, the waters lying on the surface of the prairies are

continually draining and in them lodging their vegetable deposits, which

after a lapse of years fill them up to the surface with a rich soil,

which throws up an unusual growth of grass and herbage, forming

conspicuous circles, which arrest the eye of the traveler and are

calculated to excite his surprise for ages to come."

During the latter part of the last century, when the bison inhabited

Kentucky and Pennsylvania, the salt springs of those States were

resorted to by thousands of those animals, who drank of the saline

waters and licked the impregnated earth. Mr. Thomas Ashe[38] affords us

a most interesting account, from the testimony of an eye witness, of the

behavior of a bison at a salt spring. The description refers to a

locality in western Pennsylvania, where "an old man, one of the first

settlers of this country, built his log house on the immediate borders

of a salt spring. He informed me that for the first several seasons the

buffaloes paid him their visits with the utmost regularity; they

traveled in single files, always following each other at equal

distances, forming droves, on their arrival, of about 300 each.

[Note 38: Travels in America in 1806. London, 1808.]

"The first and second years, so unacquainted were these poor brutes with

the use of this man's house or with his nature, that in a few hours they

\_rubbed\_ the house completely down, taking delight in turning the logs

off with their horns, while he had some difficulty to escape from being

trampled under their feet or crushed to death in his own ruins. At that

period he supposed there could not have been less than 2,000 in the

neighborhood of the spring. They sought for no manner of food, but only

bathed and drank three or four times a day and rolled in the earth, or

reposed with their flanks distended in the adjacent shades; and on the

fifth and sixth days separated into distinct droves, bathed, drank, and

departed in single files, according to the exact order of their arrival.

They all rolled successively in the same hole, and each thus carried

away a coat of mud to preserve the moisture on their skin and which,

when hardened and baked in the sun, would resist the stings of millions

of insects that otherwise would persecute these peaceful travelers to

madness or even death."

It was a fixed habit with the great buffalo herds to move southward from

200 to 400 miles at the approach of winter. Sometimes this movement was

accomplished quietly and without any excitement, but at other times it

was done with a rush, in which considerable distances would be gone over

on the double quick. The advance of a herd was often very much like that

of a big army, in a straggling line, from four to ten animals abreast.

Sometimes the herd moved forward in a dense mass, and in consequence

often came to grief in quicksands, alkali bogs, muddy crossings, and on

treacherous ice. In such places thousands of buffaloes lost their lives,

through those in the lead being forced into danger by pressure of the

mass coming behind. In this manner, in the summer of 1867, over two

thousand buffaloes, out of a herd of about four thousand, lost their

lives in the quicksands of the Platte River, near Plum Creek, while

attempting to cross. One winter, a herd of nearly a hundred buffaloes

attempted to cross a lake called Lac-qui-parle, in Minnesota, upon the

ice, which gave way, and drowned the entire herd. During the days of the

buffalo it was a common thing for voyagers on the Missouri River to see

buffaloes hopelessly mired in the quicksands or mud along the shore,

either dead or dying, and to find their dead bodies floating down the

river, or lodged on the upper ends of the islands and sand-bars.

Such accidents as these: it may be repeated, were due to the great

number of animals and the momentum of the moving mass. The forced

marches of the great herds were like the flight of a routed army, in

which helpless individuals were thrust into mortal peril by the

irresistible force of the mass coming behind, which rushes blindly on

after their leaders. In this way it was possible to decoy a herd toward

a precipice and cause it to plunge over en masse, the leaders being

thrust over by their followers, and all the rest following of their own

free will, like the sheep who cheerfully leaped, one after another,

through a hole in the side of a high bridge because their bell-wether

did so.

But it is not to be understood that the movement of a great herd,

because it was made on a run, necessarily partook of the nature of a

stampede in which a herd sweeps forward in a body. The most graphic

account that I ever obtained of facts bearing on this point was

furnished by Mr. James McNaney, drawn from his experience on the

northern buffalo range in 1882. His party reached the range (on Beaver

Creek, about 100 miles south of Glendive) about the middle of November,

and found buffaloes already there; in fact they had begun to arrive from

the north as early as the middle of October. About the first of December

an immense herd arrived from the north. It reached their vicinity one

night, about 10 o'clock, in a mass that seemed to spread everywhere. As

the hunters sat in their tents, loading cartridges and cleaning their

rifles, a low rumble was heard, which gradually increased to "a

thundering noise," and some one exclaimed, "There! that's a big herd of

buffalo coming in!" All ran out immediately, and hallooed and discharged

rifles to keep the buffaloes from running over their tents. Fortunately,

the horses were picketed some distance away in a grassy coulée, which

the buffaloes did not enter. The herd came at a jog trot, and moved

quite rapidly. "In the morning the whole country was black with

buffalo." It was estimated that 10,000 head were in sight. One immense

detachment went down on to a "flat" and laid down. There it remained

quietly, enjoying a long rest, for about ten days. It gradually broke up

into small bands, which strolled off in various directions looking for

food, and which the hunters quietly attacked.

A still more striking event occurred about Christmas time at the same

place. For a few days the neighborhood of McNaney's camp had been

entirely deserted by buffaloes, not even one remaining. But one morning

about daybreak a great herd which was traveling south began to pass

their camp. A long line of moving forms was seen advancing rapidly from

the northwest, coming in the direction of the hunters' camp. It

disappeared in the creek valley for a few moments, and presently the

leaders suddenly came in sight again at the top of "a rise" a few

hundred yards away, and came down the intervening slope at full speed,

within 50 yards of the two tents. After them came a living stream of

followers, all going at a gallop, described by the observer as "a long

lope," from four to ten buffaloes abreast. Sometimes there would be a

break in the column of a minute's duration, then more buffaloes would

appear at the brow of the hill, and the column went rushing by as

before. The calves ran with their mothers, and the young stock got over

the ground with much less exertion than the older animals. For about

four hours, or until past 11 o'clock, did this column of buffaloes

gallop past the camp over a course no wider than a village street. Three

miles away toward the south the long dark line of bobbing humps and

hind quarters wound to the right between two hills and disappeared. True

to their instincts, the hunters promptly brought out their rifles, and

began to fire at the buffaloes as they ran. A furious fusilade was kept

up from the very doors of the tents, and from first to last over fifty

buffaloes were killed. Some fell headlong the instant they were hit, but

the greater number ran on until their mortal wounds compelled them to

halt, draw off a little way to one side, and finally fall in their death

struggles.

Mr. McNaney stated that the hunters estimated the number of buffaloes

\_on that portion\_ of the range that winter (1881-'82) at 100,000.

It is probable, and in fact reasonably certain, that such forced-march

migrations as the above were due to snow-covered pastures and a scarcity

of food on the more northern ranges. Having learned that a journey south

will bring him to regions of less snow and more grass, it is but natural

that so lusty a traveler should migrate. The herds or bands which

started south in the fall months traveled more leisurely, with frequent

halts to graze on rich pastures. The advance was on a very different

plan, taking place in straggling lines and small groups dispersed over

quite a scope of country.

Unless closely pursued, the buffalo never chose to make a journey of

several miles through hilly country on a continuous run. Even when

fleeing from the attack of a hunter, I have often had occasion to notice

that, if the hunter was a mile behind, the buffalo would always walk

when going uphill; but as soon as the crest was gained he would begin to

run, and go down the slope either at a gallop or a swift trot. In former

times, when the buffalo's world was wide, when retreating from an attack

he always ran against the wind, to avoid running upon a new danger,

which showed that he depended more upon his sense of smell than his

eye-sight. During the last years of his existence, however, this habit

almost totally disappeared, and the harried survivors learned to run for

the regions which offered the greatest safety. But even to-day, if a

Texas hunter should go into the Staked Plains, and descry in the

distance a body of animals running against the wind, he would, without a

moment's hesitation, pronounce them buffaloes, and the chances are that

he would be right.

In winter the buffalo used to face the storms, instead of turning tail

and "drifting" before them helplessly, as domestic cattle do. But at the

same time, when beset by a blizzard, he would wisely seek shelter from

it in some narrow and deep valley or system of ravines. There the herd

would lie down and wait patiently for the storm to cease. After a heavy

fall of snow, the place to find the buffalo was in the flats and creek

bottoms, where the tall, rank bunch-grasses showed their tops above the

snow, and afforded the best and almost the only food obtainable.

When the snow-fall was unusually heavy, and lay for a long time on the

ground, the buffalo was forced to fast for days together, and sometimes

even weeks. If a warm day came, and thawed the upper surface of the snow

sufficiently for succeeding cold to freeze it into a crust, the outlook

for the bison began to be serious. A man can travel over a crust through

which the hoofs of a ponderous bison cut like chisels and leave him

floundering belly-deep. It was at such times that the Indians hunted him

on snow-shoes, and drove their spears into his vitals as he wallowed

helplessly in the drifts. Then the wolves grew fat upon the victims

which they, also, slaughtered almost without effort.

Although buffaloes did not often actually perish from hunger and cold

during the severest winters (save in a few very exceptional cases), they

often came out in very poor condition. The old bulls always suffered

more severely than the rest, and at the end of winter were frequently in

miserable plight.

Unlike most other terrestrial quadrupeds of America, so long as he could

roam at will the buffalo had settled migratory habits.[39] While the elk

and black-tail deer change their altitude twice a year, in conformity

with the approach and disappearance of winter, the buffalo makes a

radical change of latitude. This was most noticeable in the great

western pasture region, where the herds were most numerous and their

movements most easily observed.

[Note 39: On page 248 of his "North American Indians," vol. I, Mr.

Catlin declares pointedly that "these animals are, truly speaking,

gregarious, but not migratory; they graze in immense and almost

incredible numbers at times, and roam about and over vast tracts of

country from east to west and from west to east as often as from north

to south, which has often been supposed they naturally and habitually

did to accommodate themselves to the temperature of the climate in the

different latitudes." Had Mr. Catlin resided continuously in any one

locality on the great buffalo range, he would have found that the

buffalo had decided migratory habits. The abundance of proof on this

point renders it unnecessary to eater fully into the details of the

subject.]

At the approach of winter the whole great system of herds which ranged

from the Peace River to the Indian Territory moved south a few hundred

miles, and wintered under more favorable circumstances than each band

would have experienced at its farthest north. Thus it happened that

nearly the whole of the great range south of the Saskatchewan was

occupied by buffaloes even in winter.

The movement north began with the return of mild weather in the early

spring. Undoubtedly this northward migration was to escape the heat of

their southern winter range rather than to find better pasture; for as a

grazing country for cattle all the year round, Texas is hardly

surpassed, except where it is overstocked. It was with the buffaloes a

matter of choice rather than necessity which sent them on their annual

pilgrimage northward.

Col. R. I. Dodge, who has made many valuable observations on the

migratory habits of the southern buffaloes, has recorded the

following:[40]

"Early in spring, as soon as the dry and apparently desert prairie had

begun to change its coat of dingy brown to one of palest green, the

horizon would begin to be dotted with buffalo, single or in groups of

two or three, forerunners of the coming herd. Thicker and thicker and in

larger groups they come, until by the time the grass is well up the

whole vast landscape appears a mass of buffalo, some individuals

feeding, others standing, others lying down, but the herd moving slowly,

moving constantly to the northward. \* \* \* Some years, as in 1871, the

buffalo appeared to move northward in one immense column oftentimes from

20 to 50 miles in width, and of unknown depth from front to rear. Other

years the northward journey was made in several parallel columns, moving

at the same rate, and with their numerous flankers covering a width of a

hundred or more miles.

"The line of march of this great spring migration was not always the

same, though it was confined within certain limits. I am informed by old

frontiersmen that it has not within twenty-five years crossed the

Arkansas River east of Great Bend nor west of Big Sand Creek. The most

favored routes crossed the Arkansas at the mouth of Walnut Creek, Pawnee

Fork, Mulberry Creek, the Cimarron Crossing, and Big Sand Creek.

"As the great herd proceeds northward it is constantly depleted, numbers

wandering off to the right and left, until finally it is scattered in

small herds far and wide over the vast feeding grounds, where they pass

the summer.

"When the food in one locality fails they go to another, and towards

fall, when the grass of the high prairie becomes parched by the heat and

drought, they gradually work their way back to the south, concentrating

on the rich pastures of Texas and the Indian Territory, whence, the same

instinct acting on all, they are ready to start together on the

northward march as soon as spring starts the grass."

[Note 40: Our Wild Indians, p. 283, \_et seq.\_]

So long as the bison held undisputed possession of the great plains his

migratory habits were as above--regular, general, and on a scale that

was truly grand. The herds that wintered in Texas, the Indian Territory,

and New Mexico probably spent their summers in Nebraska, southwestern

Dakota, and Wyoming. The winter herds of northern Colorado, Wyoming,

Nebraska, and southern Dakota went to northern Dakota and Montana, while

the great Montana herds spent the summer on the Grand Coteau des

Prairies lying between the Saskatchewan and the Missouri. The two great

annual expeditions of the Red River half-breeds, which always took place

in summer, went in two directions from Winnipeg and Pembina--one, the

White Horse Plain division, going westward along the Qu'Appelle to the

Saskatchewan country, and the other, the Red River division, southwest

into Dakota. In 1840 the site of the present city of Jamestown, Dakota,

was the northeastern limit of the herds that summered in Dakota, and the

country lying between that point and the Missouri was for years the

favorite hunting ground of the Red River division.

The herds which wintered on the Montana ranges always went north in the

early spring, usually in March, so that during the time the hunters were

hauling in the hides taken on the winter hunt the ranges were entirely

deserted. It is equally certain, however, that a few small bauds

remained in certain portions of Montana throughout the summer. But the

main body crossed the international boundary, and spent the summer on

the plains of the Saskatchewan, where they were hunted by the

half-breeds from the Red River settlements and the Indians of the

plains. It is my belief that in this movement nearly all the buffaloes

of Montana and Dakota participated, and that the herds which spent the

summer in Dakota, where they were annually hunted by the Red River

half-breeds, came up from Kansas, Colorado, and Nebraska.

While most of the calves were born on the summer ranges, many were

brought forth en route. It was the habit of the cows to retire to a

secluded spot, if possible a ravine well screened from observation,

bring forth their young, and nourish and defend them until they were

strong enough to join the herd. Calves were born all the time from March

to July, and sometimes even as late as August. On the summer ranges it

was the habit of the cows to leave the bulls at calving time, and thus

it often happened that small herds were often seen composed of bulls

only. Usually the cow produced but one calf, but twins were not

uncommon. Of course many calves were brought forth in the herd, but the

favorite habit of the cow was as stated. As soon as the young calves

were brought into the herd, which for prudential reasons occurred at the

earliest possible moment, the bulls assumed the duty of protecting them

from the wolves which at all times congregated in the vicinity of a

herd, watching for an opportunity to seize a calf or a wounded buffalo

which might be left behind. A calf always follows its mother until its

successor is appointed and installed, unless separated from her by force

of circumstances. They suck until they are nine months old, or even

older, and Mr. McNaney once saw a lusty calf suck its mother (in

January) on the Montana range several hours after she had been killed

for her skin.

When a buffalo is wounded it leaves the herd immediately and goes off as

far from the line of pursuit as it can get, to escape the rabble of

hunters, who are sure to follow the main body. If any deep ravines are

at hand the wounded animal limps away to the bottom of the deepest and

most secluded one, and gradually works his way up to its very head,

where he finds himself in a perfect cul-de-sac, barely wide enough to

admit him. Here he is so completely hidden by the high walls and

numerous bends that his pursuer must needs come within a few feet of his

horns before his huge bulk is visible. I have more than once been

astonished at the real impregnability of the retreats selected by

wounded bison. In following up wounded bulls in ravine headings it

always became too dangerous to make the last stage of the pursuit on

horseback, for fear of being caught in a passage so narrow as to insure

a fatal accident to man or horse in case of a sudden discovery of the

quarry. I have seen wounded bison shelter in situations where a single

bull could easily defend himself from a whole pack of wolves, being

completely walled in on both sides and the rear, and leaving his foes no

point of attack save his head and horns.

Bison which were nursing serious wounds most often have gone many days

at a time without either food or water, and in this connection it may be

mentioned that the recuperative power of a bison is really wonderful.

Judging from the number of old leg wounds, fully healed, which I have

found in freshly killed bisons, one may be tempted to believe that a

bison never died of a broken leg. One large bull which I skeletonized

had had his humerus shot squarely in two, but it had united again more

firmly than ever. Another large bull had the head of his left femur and

the hip socket shattered completely to pieces by a big ball, but he had

entirely recovered from it, and was as lusty a runner as any bull we

chased. We found that while a broken leg was a misfortune to a buffalo,

it always took something more serious than that to stop him.

VI. THE FOOD OF THE BISON.

It is obviously impossible to enumerate all the grasses which served the

bison as food on his native heath without presenting a complete list of

all the plants of that order found in a given region; but it is at least

desirable to know which of the grasses of the great pasture region were

his favorite and most common food. It was the nutritious character and

marvelous abundance of his food supply which enabled the bison to exist

in such absolutely countless numbers as characterized his occupancy of

the great plains. The following list comprises the grasses which were

the bison's principal food, named in the order of their importance:

\_Bouteloua oligostachya\_ (buffalo, grama, or mesquite grass).--This

remarkable grass formed the \_pièce de résistance\_ of the bison's bill

of fare in the days when he flourished, and it now comes to us daily in

the form of beef produced of primest quality and in greatest quantity on

what was until recently the great buffalo range. This grass is the most

abundant and widely distributed species to be found in the great pasture

region between the eastern slope of the Rocky Mountains and the

nineteenth degree of west longitude. It is the principal grass of the

plains from Texas to the British Possessions, and even in the latter

territory it is quite conspicuous. To any one but a botanist its first

acquaintance means a surprise. Its name and fame lead the unacquainted

to expect a grass which is tall, rank, and full of "fodder," like the

"blue joint" (\_Andropogon provincialis\_). The grama grass is very short,

the leaves being usually not more than 2 or 3 inches in length and

crowded together at the base of the stems. The flower stalk is about a

foot in height, but on grazed lands are eaten off and but seldom seen.

The leaves are narrow and inclined to curl, and lie close to the ground.

Instead of developing a continuous growth, this grass grows in small,

irregular patches, usually about the size of a man's hand, with narrow

strips of perfectly bare ground between them. The grass curls closely

upon the ground, in a woolly carpet or cushion, greatly resembling a

layer of Florida moss. Even in spring-time it never shows more color

than a tint of palest green, and the landscape which is dependent upon

this grass for color is never more than "a gray and melancholy waste."

Unlike the soft, juicy, and succulent grasses of the well-watered

portions of the United States, the tiny leaves of the grama grass are

hard, stiff, and dry. I have often noticed that in grazing neither

cattle nor horses are able to bite off the blades, but instead each leaf

is pulled out of the tuft, seemingly by its root.

Notwithstanding its dry and uninviting appearance, this grass is highly

nutritious, and its fat-producing qualities are unexcelled. The heat of

summer dries it up effectually without destroying its nutritive

elements, and it becomes for the remainder of the year excellent hay,

cured on its own roots. It affords good grazing all the year round, save

in winter, when it is covered with snow, and even then, if the snow is

not too deep, the buffaloes, cattle, and horses paw down through it to

reach the grass, or else repair to wind-swept ridges and hill-tops,

where the snow has been blown off and left the grass partly exposed.

Stock prefer it to all the other grasses of the plains.

On bottom-lands, where moisture is abundant, this grass develops much

more luxuriantly, growing in a close mass, and often to a height of a

foot or more, if not grazed down, when it is cut for hay, and sometimes

yields 11/2 tons to the acre. In Montana and the north it is generally

known as "buffalo-grass," a name to which it would seem to be fully

entitled, notwithstanding the fact that this name is also applied, and

quite generally, to another species, the next to be noticed.

\_Buchloë dactyloides\_ (Southern buffalo-grass).--This species is next

in value and extent of distribution to the grama grass. It also is found

all over the great plains south of Nebraska and southern Wyoming, but

not further north, although in many localities it occurs so sparsely as

to be of little account. A single bunch of it very greatly resembles

\_Bouteloua oligostachya\_, but its general growth is very different. It

is very short, its general mass seldom rising more than 3 inches above

the ground. It grows in extensive patches, and spreads by means of

stolons, which sometimes are 2 feet in length, with joints every 3 or 4

inches. Owing to its southern distribution this might well be named the

Southern buffalo grass, to distinguish it from the two other species of

higher latitudes, to which the name "buffalo" has been fastened forever.

\_Stipa spartea\_ (Northern buffalo-grass; wild oat).--This grass is found

in southern Manitoba, westwardly across the plains to the Rocky

Mountains, and southward as far as Montana, where it is common in many

localities. On what was once the buffalo range of the British

Possessions this rank grass formed the bulk of the winter pasturage, and

in that region is quite as famous as our grama grass. An allied species

(\_Stipa viridula\_, bunch-grass) is "widely diffused over our Rocky

Mountain region, extending to California and British America, and

furnishing a considerable part of the wild forage of the region" \_Stipa

spartea\_ bears an ill name among stockmen on account of the fact that at

the base of each seed is a very hard and sharp-pointed callus, which

under certain circumstances (so it is said) lodges in the cheeks of

domestic animals that feed upon this grass when it is dry, and which

cause much trouble. But the buffalo, like the wild horse and half-wild

range cattle, evidently escaped this annoyance. This grass is one of the

common species over a wide area of the northern plains, and is always

found on soil which is comparatively dry. In Dakota, Minnesota, and

northwest Iowa it forms a considerable portion of the upland prairie

hay.

Of the remaining grasses it is practically impossible to single out any

one as being specially entitled to fourth place in this list. There are

several species which flourish in different localities, and in many

respects appear to be of about equal importance as food for stock. Of

these the following are the most noteworthy:

\_Aristida purpurea\_ (Western beard-grass; purple "bunch-grass" of

Montana).--On the high, rolling prairies of the Missouri-Yellowstone

divide this grass is very abundant. It grows in little solitary bunches,

about 6 inches high, scattered through the curly buffalo-grass

(\_Bouteloua oligostachya\_). Under more favorable conditions it grows to

a height of 12 to 18 inches. It is one of the prettiest grasses of that

region, and in the fall and winter its purplish color makes it quite

noticeable. The Montana stockmen consider it one of the most valuable

grasses of that region for stock of all kinds. Mr. C. M. Jacobs assured

me that the buffalo used to be very fond of this grass, and that

"wherever this grass grew in abundance there were the best

hunting-grounds for the bison." It appears that \_Aristida purpurea\_ is

not sufficiently abundant elsewhere in the Northwest to make it an

important food for stock; but Dr. Vesey declares that it is "abundant on

the plains of Kansas, New Mexico, and Texas."

\_Koeleria cristata.\_--Very generally distributed from Texas and New

Mexico to the British Possessions; sand hills and arid soils; mountains,

up to 8,000 feet.

\_Poa tenuifolia\_ (blue-grass of the plains and mountains).--A valuable

"bunch-grass," widely distributed throughout the great pasture region;

grows in all sorts of soils and situations; common in the Yellowstone

Park.

\_Festuca scabrella\_ (bunch-grass).--One of the most valuable grasses of

Montana and the Northwest generally; often called the "great

bunch-grass." It furnishes excellent food for horses and cattle, and is

so tall it is cut in large quantities for hay. This is the prevailing

species on the foot-hills and mountains generally, up to an altitude of

7,000 feet, where it is succeeded by \_Festuca ovina\_.

\_Andropogon provincialis\_ (blue stem).--An important species, extending

from eastern Kansas and Nebraska to the foot-hills of the Rocky

Mountains, and from Northern Texas to the Saskatchewan; common in

Montana on alkali flats and bottom lands generally. This and the

preceding species were of great value to the buffalo in winter, when the

shorter grasses were covered with snow.

\_Andropogon scoparius\_ (bunch grass; broom sedge; wood-grass).--Similar

to the preceding in distribution and value, but not nearly so tall.

None of the buffalo grasses are found in the mountains. In the mountain

regions which have been visited by the buffalo and in the Yellowstone

Park, where to-day the only herd remaining in a state of nature is to be

found (though not by the man with a gun), the following are the grasses

which form all but a small proportion of the ruminant food: \_Koeleria

cristata\_; \_Poa tenuifolia\_ (Western blue-grass); \_Stipa viridula\_

(feather-grass); \_Stipa comata\_; \_Agropyrum divergens\_; \_Agropyrum

caninum\_.

When pressed by hunger, the buffalo used to browse on certain species of

sage-brush, particularly \_Atriplex canescens\_ of the Southwest. But he

was discriminating in the matter of diet, and as far as can be

ascertained he was never known to eat the famous and much-dreaded "loco"

weed (\_Astragalus molissimus\_), which to ruminant animals is a veritable

drug of madness. Domestic cattle and horses often eat this plant; where

it is abundant, and become demented in consequence.

VII. MENTAL CAPACITY AND DISPOSITION.

(1) \_Reasoning from cause to effect.\_--The buffalo of the past was an

animal of a rather low order of intelligence, and his dullness of

intellect was one of the important factors in his phenomenally swift

extermination. He was provokingly slow in comprehending the existence

and nature of the dangers that threatened his life, and, like the stupid

brute that he was, would very often stand quietly and see two or three

score, or even a hundred, of his relatives and companions shot down

before his eyes, with no other feeling than one of stupid wonder and

curiosity. Neither the noise nor smoke of the still-hunter's rifle, the

falling, struggling, nor the final death of his companions conveyed to

his mind the idea of a danger to be fled from, and so the herd stood

still and allowed the still-hunter to slaughter its members at will.

Like the Indian, and many white men also, the buffalo seemed to feel

that their number was so great it could never be sensibly diminished.

The presence of such a great multitude gave to each of its individuals a

feeling of security and mutual support that is very generally found in

animals who congregate in great herds. The time was when a band of elk

would stand stupidly and wait for its members to be shot down one after

another; but it is believed that this was due more to panic than to a

lack of comprehension of danger.

The fur seals who cover the "hauling grounds" of St. Paul and St. George

Islands, Alaska, in countless thousands, have even less sense of danger

and less comprehension of the slaughter of thousands of their kind,

which takes place daily, than had the bison. They allow themselves to be

herded and driven off landwards from the hauling-ground for half a mile

to the killing-ground, and, finally, with most cheerful indifference,

permit the Aleuts to club their brains out.

It is to be added that whenever and wherever seals or sea-lions inhabit

a given spot, with but few exceptions, it is an easy matter to approach

individuals of the herd. The presence of an immense number of

individuals plainly begets a feeling of security and mutual support. And

let not the bison or the seal be blamed for this, for man himself

exhibits the same foolish instinct. Who has not met the woman of mature

years and full intellectual vigor who is mortally afraid to spend a

night entirely alone in her own house, but is perfectly willing to do

so, and often does do so without fear, when she can have the company of

one small and helpless child, or, what is still worse, three or four of

them! But with the approach of extermination, and the utter breaking up

of all the herds, a complete change has been wrought in the character of

the bison. At last, but alas! entirely too late, the crack of the rifle

and its accompanying puff of smoke conveyed to the slow mind of the

bison a sense of deadly danger to himself. At last he recognized man,

whether on foot or horseback, or peering at him from a coulée, as his

mortal enemy. At last he learned to run. In 1886 we found the scattered

remnant of the great northern herd the wildest and most difficult

animals to kill that we had ever hunted in any country. It had been only

through the keenest exercise of all their powers of self-preservation

that those buffaloes had survived until that late day, and we found

them almost as swift as antelopes and far more wary. The instant a

buffalo caught sight of a man, even though a mile distant, he was off at

the top of his speed, and generally ran for some wild region several

miles away.

In our party was an experienced buffalo-hunter, who in three years had

slaughtered over three thousand head for their hides. He declared that

if he could ever catch a "bunch" at rest he could "get a stand" the same

as he used to do, and kill several head before the rest would run. It so

happened that the first time we found buffaloes we discovered a bunch of

fourteen head, lying in the sun at noon, on the level top of a low

butte, all noses pointing up the wind. We stole up within range and

fired. At the instant the first shot rang out up sprang every buffalo as

if he had been thrown upon his feet by steel springs, and in a second's

time the whole bunch was dashing away from us with the speed of

race-horses.

Our buffalo-hunter declared that in chasing buffaloes we could count

with certainty upon their always running against the wind, for this had

always been their habit. Although this was once their habit, we soon

found that those who now represent the survival of the fittest have

learned better wisdom, and now run (1) away from their pursuer and (2)

toward the best hiding place. Now they pay no attention whatever to the

direction of the wind, and if a pursuer follows straight behind, a

buffalo may change his course three or four times in a 10-mile chase. An

old bull once led one of our hunters around three-quarters of a circle

which had a diameter of 5 or 6 miles.

The last buffaloes were mentally as capable of taking care of themselves

as any animals I ever hunted. The power of original reasoning which they

manifested in scattering all over a given tract of rough country, like

hostile Indians when hotly pressed by soldiers, in the Indian-like

manner in which they hid from sight in deep hollows, and, as we finally

proved, in \_grazing only in ravines and hollows\_, proved conclusively

that \_but for the use of fire-arms\_ those very buffaloes would have been

actually safe from harm by man, and that they would have increased

indefinitely. As they were then, the Indians' arrows and spears could

never have been brought to bear upon them, save in rare instances, for

they had thoroughly learned to dread man and fly from him for their

lives. Could those buffaloes have been protected from rifles and

revolvers the resultant race would have displayed far more active mental

powers, keener vision, and finer physique than the extinguished race

possessed.

In fleeing from an enemy the buffalo ran against the wind, in order that

his keen scent might save him from the disaster of running upon new

enemies; which was an idea wholly his own, and not copied by any other

animal so far as known.

But it must be admitted that the buffalo of the past was very often a

most stupid reasoner. He would deliberately walk into a quicksand,

where hundreds of his companions were already ingulfed and in their

death-struggle. He would quit feeding, run half a mile, and rush

headlong into a moving train of cars that happened to come between him

and the main herd on the other side of the track. He allowed himself to

be impounded and slaughtered by a howling mob in a rudely constructed

pen, which a combined effort on the part of three or four old bulls

would have utterly demolished at any point. A herd of a thousand

buffaloes would allow an armed hunter to gallop into their midst, very

often within arm's-length, when any of the bulls nearest him might

easily have bowled him over and had him trampled to death in a moment.

The hunter who would ride in that manner into a herd of the Cape

buffaloes of Africa (\_Bubalus caffer\_) would be unhorsed and killed

before he had gone half a furlong.

(2) \_Curiosity.\_--The buffalo of the past possessed but little

curiosity; he was too dull to entertain many unnecessary thoughts. Had

he possessed more of this peculiar trait, which is the mark of an

inquiring mind, he would much sooner have accomplished a comprehension

of the dangers that proved his destruction. His stolid indifference to

everything he did not understand cost him his existence, although in

later years he displayed more interest in his environment. On one

occasion in hunting I staked my success with an old bull I was pursuing

on the chance that when he reached the crest of a ridge his curiosity

would prompt him to pause an instant to look at me. Up to that moment he

had had only one quick glance at me before he started to run. As he

climbed the slope ahead of me, in full view, I dismounted and made ready

to fire the instant he should pause to look at me. As I expected, he did

come to a fall stop on the crest of the ridge, and turned half around to

look at me. But for his curiosity I should have been obliged to fire at

him under very serious disadvantages.

(3) \_Fear.\_--With the buffalo, fear of man is now the ruling passion.

Says Colonel Dodge: "He is as timid about his flank and rear as a raw

recruit. When traveling nothing in front stops him, but an unusual

object in the rear will send him to the right-about [toward the main

body of the herd] at the top of his speed."

(4) \_Courage.\_--It was very seldom that the buffalo evinced any courage

save that of despair, which even cowards possess. Unconscious of his

strength, his only thought was flight, and it was only when brought to

bay that he was ready to fight. Now and then, however, in the chase, the

buffalo turned upon his pursuer and overthrew horse and rider. Sometimes

the tables were completely turned, and the hunter found his only safety

in flight. During the buffalo slaughter the butchers sometimes had

narrow escapes from buffaloes supposed to be dead or mortally wounded,

and a story comes from the great northern range south of Glendive of a

hunter who was killed by an old bull whose tongue he had actually cut

out in the belief that he was dead.

Sometimes buffalo cows display genuine courage in remaining with their

calves in the presence of danger, although in most cases they left their

offspring to their fate. During a hunt for live buffalo calves,

undertaken by Mr. C. J. Jones of Garden City, Kans., in 1886, and very

graphically described by a staff correspondent of the American Field in

a series of articles in that journal under the title of "The Last of the

Buffalo," the following remarkable incident occurred:[41]

[Note 41: American Field, July 24, 1886, p. 78.]

"The last calf was caught by Carter, who roped it neatly as Mr. Jones

cut it out of the herd and turned it toward him. This was a fine heifer

calf, and was apparently the idol of her mother's heart, for the latter

came very near making a casualty the price of the capture. As soon as

the calf was roped, the old cow left the herd and charged on Carter

viciously, as he bent over his victim. Seeing the danger, Mr. Jones rode

in at just the nick of time, and drove the cow off for a moment; but she

returned again and again, and finally began charging him whenever he

came near; so that, much as he regretted it, he had to shoot her with

his revolver, which he did, killing her almost immediately."

The mothers of the thirteen other calves that were caught by Mr. Jones's

party allowed their offspring to be "cut out," lassoed, and tied, while

they themselves devoted all their energies to leaving them as far behind

as possible.

(5) \_Affection.\_--While the buffalo cows manifested a fair degree of

affection for their young, the adult bulls of the herd often displayed a

sense of responsibility for the safety of the calves that was admirable,

to say the least. Those who have had opportunities for watching large

herds tell us that whenever wolves approached and endeavored to reach a

calf the old bulls would immediately interpose and drive the enemy away.

It was a well-defined habit for the bulls to form the outer circle of

every small group or section of a great herd, with the calves in the

center, well guarded from the wolves, which regarded them as their most

choice prey.

Colonel Dodge records a remarkable incident in illustration of the

manner in which the bull buffaloes protected the calves of the herd.[42]

[Note 42: Plains of the Great West, p. 125.]

"The duty of protecting the calves devolved almost entirely on the

bulls. I have seen evidences of this many times, but the most remarkable

instance I have ever heard of was related to me by an army surgeon, who

was an eye-witness.

"He was one evening returning to camp after a day's hunt, when his

attention was attracted by the curious action of a little knot of six or

eight buffalo. Approaching sufficiently near to see clearly, he

discovered that this little knot were all bulls, standing in a close

circle, with their heads outwards, while in a concentric circle at some

12 or 15 paces distant sat, licking their chaps in impatient expectancy,

at least a dozen large gray wolves (excepting man, the most dangerous

enemy of the buffalo).

"The doctor determined to watch the performance. After a few moments

the knot broke up, and, still keeping in a compact mass, started on a

trot for the main herd, some half a mile oft". To his very great

astonishment, the doctor now saw that the central and controlling figure

of this mass was a poor little calf so newly born as scarcely to be able

to walk. After going 50 or 100 paces the calf laid down, the bulls

disposed themselves in a circle as before, and the wolves, who had

trotted along on each side of their retreating supper, sat down and

licked their chaps again; and though the doctor did not see the finale,

it being late and the camp distant, he had no doubt that the noble

fathers did their whole duty by their offspring, and carried it safely

to the herd."

(6) \_Temper.\_--I have asked many old buffalo hunters for facts in regard

to the temper and disposition of herd buffaloes, and all agree that they

are exceedingly quiet, peace loving, and even indolent animals at all

times save during the rutting season. Says Colonel Dodge: "The habits of

the buffalo are almost identical with those of the domestic cattle.

Owing either to a more pacific disposition, or to the greater number of

bulls, there, is very little fighting, even at the season when it might

be expected. I have been among them for days, have watched their conduct

for hours at a time, and with the very best opportunities for

observation, but have never seen a regular combat between bulls. They

frequently strike each other with their horns, but this seems to be a

mere expression of impatience at being crowded."

In referring to the "running season" of the buffalo, Mr. Catlin says:

"It is no uncommon thing at this season, at these gatherings, to see

several thousands in a mass eddying and wheeling about under a cloud of

dust, which is raised by the bulls as they are pawing in the dirt, or

engaged in desperate combats, as they constantly are, plunging and

butting at each other in a most furious manner."

On the whole, the disposition of the buffalo is anything but vicious.

Both sexes yield with surprising readiness to the restraints of

captivity, and in a remarkably short time become, if taken young, as

fully domesticated as ordinary cattle. Buffalo calves are as easily

tamed as domestic ones, and make very interesting pets. A prominent

trait of character in the captive buffalo is a mulish obstinacy or

headstrong perseverance under certain circumstances that is often very

annoying. When a buffalo makes up his mind to go through a fence, he is

very apt to go through, either peaceably or by force, as occasion

requires. Fortunately, however, the captive animals usually accept a

fence in the proper spirit, and treat it with a fair degree of respect.

VIII. VALUE OF THE BUFFALO TO MAN.

It may fairly be supposed that if the people of this country could have

been made to realize the immense money value of the great buffalo herds

as they existed in 1870, a vigorous and successful effort would have

been made to regulate and restrict the slaughter. The fur seal of

Alaska, of which about 100,000 are killed annually for their skins,

yield an annual revenue to the Government of $100,000 and add $900,000

more to the actual wealth of the United States. It pays to protect those

seals, and we mean to protect them against all comers who seek their

unrestricted slaughter, no matter whether the poachers be American,

English, Russian, or Canadian. It would be folly to do otherwise, and if

those who would exterminate the fur seal by shooting them in the water

will not desist for the telling, then they must by the compelling.

The fur seal is a good investment for the United States, and their

number is not diminishing. As the buffalo herds existed in 1870, 500,000

head of bulls, young and old, could have been killed every year for a

score of years without sensibly diminishing the size of the herds. At a

low estimate these could easily have been made to yield various products

worth $5 each, as follows: Kobe, $2.50; tongue, 20 cents; meat of

hindquarters, $2; bones, horns, and hoofs, 25 cents; total, $5. And the

amount annually added to the wealth of the United States would have been

$2,500,000.

On all the robes taken for the market, say, 200,000, the Government

could have collected a tax of 50 cents each, which would have yielded a

sum doubly sufficient to have maintained a force of mounted police fully

competent to enforce the laws regulating the slaughter. Had a contract

for the protection of the buffalo been offered at $50,000 per annum, ay,

or even half that sum, an army of competent men would have competed for

it every year, and it could have been carried out to the letter. But, as

yet, the American people have not learned to spend money for the

protection of valuable game; and by the time they do learn it, there

will be no game to protect.

Even despite the enormous waste of raw material that ensued in the

utilization of the buffalo product, the total cash value of all the

material derived from this source, if it could only be reckoned up,

would certainly amount to many millions of dollars--perhaps twenty

millions, all told. This estimate may, to some, seem high, but when we

stop to consider that in eight years, from 1876 to 1884, a single firm,

that of Messrs. J. & A. Boskowitz, 105 Greene street, New York, paid out

the enormous sum of $923,070 (nearly one million) for robes and hides,

and that in a single year (1882) another firm, that of Joseph Ullman,

165 Mercer street, New York, paid out $216,250 for robes and hides, it

may not seem so incredible.

Had there been a deliberate plan for the suppression of all statistics

relating to the slaughter of buffalo in the United States, and what it

yielded, the result could not have been more complete barrenness than

exists to-day in regard to this subject. There is only one railway

company which kept its books in such a manner as to show the kind and

quantity of its business at that time. Excepting this, nothing is known

definitely.

Fortunately, enough facts and figures were recorded during the hunting

operations of the Red River half-breeds to enable us, by bringing them

all together, to calculate with sufficient exactitude the value of the

buffalo to them from 1820 to 1840. The result ought to be of interest to

all who think it is not worth while to spend money in preserving our

characteristic game animals.

In Ross's "Red River Settlement," pp. 242-273, and Schoolcraft's "North

American Indians," Part iv, pp. 101-110, are given detailed accounts of

the conduct and results of two hunting expeditions by the half-breeds,

with many valuable statistics. On this data we base our calculation.

Taking the result of one particular day's slaughter as an index to the

methods of the hunters in utilizing the products of the chase, we find

that while "not less than 2,500 animals were killed," out of that number

only 375 bags of pemmican and 240 bales of dried meat were made. "Now,"

says Mr. Ross," making all due allowance for waste, 750 animals would

have been ample for such a result. What, then, we might ask, became of

the remaining 1,750! \* \* \* Scarcely one-third in number of the animals

killed is turned to account."

A bundle of dried meat weighs 60 to 70 pounds, and a bag of pemmican 100

to 110 pounds. If economically worked up, a whole buffalo cow yields

half a bag of pemmican (about 55 pounds) and three-fourths of a bundle

of dried meat (say 45 pounds). The most economical calculate that from

eight to ten cows are required to load a single Red River cart. The

proceeds of 1,776 cows once formed 228 bags of pemmican, 1,213 bales of

dried meat, 166 sacks of tallow, each weighing 200 pounds, 556 bladders

of marrow weighing 12 pounds each, and the value of the whole was

$8,160. The total of the above statement is 132,057 pounds of buffalo

product for 1,776 cows, or within a fraction of 75 pounds to each cow.

The bulls and young animals killed were not accounted for.

The expedition described by Mr. Ross contained 1,210 carts and 620

hunters, and returned with 1,089,000 pounds of meat, making 900 pounds

for each cart, and 200 pounds for each individual in the expedition, of

all ages and both sexes. Allowing, as already ascertained, that of the

above quantity of product every 75 pounds represents one cow saved and

two and one third buffaloes wasted, it means that 14,520 buffaloes were

killed and utilized and 33,250 buffaloes were killed and eaten fresh or

wasted, and 47,770 buffaloes were killed by 620 hunters, or an average

of 77 buffaloes to each hunter. The total number of buffaloes killed for

each cart was 39.

Allowing, what was actually the case, that every buffalo killed would,

if properly cared for, have yielded meat, fat, and robe worth at least

$5, the total value of the buffaloes slaughtered by that expedition

amounted to $258,850, and of which the various products actually

utilized represented a cash value of $72,001 added to the wealth of the

Red River half-breeds.

In 1820 there went 540 carts to the buffalo plains; in 1825, 680; in

1830, 820; in 1835, 970; in 1840, 1,210.

From 1820 to 1825 the average for each year was 610; from 1825 to 1830,

750; from 1830 to 1835, 895; from 1835 to 1840, 1,000.

Accepting the statements of eye-witnesses that for every buffalo killed

two and one-third buffaloes are wasted or eaten on the spot, and that

every loaded cart represented thirty-nine dead buffaloes which were

worth when utilized $5 each, we have the following series of totals:

From 1820 to 1825 five expeditions, of 610 carts each, killed 118,950

buffaloes, worth $594,750.

From 1825 to 1830 five expeditions, of 750 carts each, killed 146,250

buffaloes, worth $731,250.

From 1830 to 1835 five expeditions, of 895 carts each, killed 174,525

buffaloes, worth $872,625.

From 1835 to 1840 five expeditions, of 1,090 carts each, killed 212,550

buffaloes, worth $1,062,750.

Total number of buffaloes killed in twenty years,[43] $652,275; total

value of buffaloes killed in twenty years,[43] $3,261,375; total value

of the product utilized[43] and added to the wealth of the settlements,

$978,412.

[Note 43: By the Red River half-breeds only.]

The Eskimo has his seal, which yields nearly everything that he

requires; the Korak of Siberia depends for his very existence upon his

reindeer; the Ceylon native has the cocoa-nut palm, which leaves him

little else to desire, and the North American Indian had the American,

bison. If any animal was ever designed by the hand of nature for the

express purpose of supplying, at one stroke, nearly all the wants of an

entire race, surely the buffalo was intended for the Indian.

And right well was this gift of the gods utilized by the children of

nature to whom it came. Up to the time when the United States Government

began to support our Western Indians by the payment of annuities and

furnishing quarterly supplies of food, clothing, blankets, cloth, tents,

etc., the buffalo had been the main dependence of more than 50,000

Indians who inhabited the buffalo range and its environs. Of the many

different uses to which the buffalo and his various parts were, put by

the red man, the following were the principal ones:

The body of the buffalo yielded fresh meat, of which thousands of tons

were consumed; dried meat, prepared in summer for winter use; pemmican

(also prepared in summer), of meat, fat, and berries; tallow, made up

into large balls or sacks, and kept in store; marrow, preserved in

bladders; and tongues, dried and smoked, and eaten as a delicacy.

The skin of the buffalo yielded a robe, dressed with the hair on, for

clothing and bedding; a hide, dressed without the hair, which made a

teepee cover, when a number were sewn together; boats, when sewn

together in a green state, over a wooden framework. Shields, made from

the thickest portions, as rawhide; ropes, made up as rawhide; clothing

of many kinds; bags for use in traveling; coffins, or winding sheets for

the dead, etc.

Other portions utilized were sinews, which furnished fiber for ropes,

thread, bow-strings, snow-shoe webs, etc.; hair, which was sometimes

made into belts and ornaments; "buffalo chips," which formed a valuable

and highly-prized fuel; bones, from which many articles of use and

ornament were made; horns, which were made into spoons, drinking

vessels, etc.

After the United States Government began to support the buffalo-hunting

Indians with annuities and supplies, the woolen blanket and canvas tent

took the place of the buffalo robe and the skin-covered teepee, and

"Government beef" took the place of buffalo meat. But the slaughter of

buffaloes went on just the same, and the robes and hides taken were

traded for useless and often harmful luxuries, such as canned

provisions, fancy knickknacks, whisky, fire-arms of the most approved

pattern, and quantities of fixed ammunition. During the last ten years

of the existence of the herds it is an open question whether the buffalo

did not do our Indians more harm than good. Amongst the Crows, who were

liberally provided for by the Government, horse racing was a common

pastime, and the stakes were usually dressed buffalo robes.[44]

[Note 44: On one occasion, which is doubtless still remembered with

bitterness by many a Crow of the Custer Agency, my old friend Jim

McNaney backed his horse Ogalalla against the horses of the whole Crow

tribe. The Crows forthwith formed a pool, which consisted of a huge pile

of buffalo robes, worth about $1,200, and with it backed their best

race-horse. He was forthwith "beaten out of sight" by Ogalalla, and

another grievance was registered against the whites.]

The total disappearance of the buffalo has made no perceptible

difference in the annual cost of the Indians to the Government. During

the years when buffaloes were numerous and robes for the purchase of

fire-arms and cartridges were plentiful, Indian wars were frequent, and

always costly to the Government. The Indians were then quite

independent, because they could take the war path at any time and live

on buffalo indefinitely. Now, the case is very different. The last time

Sitting Bull went on the war-path and was driven up into Manitoba, he

had the doubtful pleasure of living on his ponies and dogs until he

became utterly starved out. Since his last escapade, the Sioux have been

compelled to admit that the game is up and the war-path is open to them

no longer. Should they wish to do otherwise they know that they could

survive only by killing cattle, and cattle that are guarded by cowboys

and ranchmen are no man's game. Therefore, while we no longer have to

pay for an annual campaign in force against hostile Indians, the total

absence of the buffalo brings upon the nation the entire support of the

Indian, and the cash outlay each year is as great as ever.

The value of the American bison to civilized man can never be

calculated, nor even fairly estimated. It may with safety be said,

however, that it has been probably tenfold greater than most persons

have ever supposed. It would be a work of years to gather statistics of

the immense bulk of robes and hides, undoubtedly amounting to millions

in the aggregate; the thousands of tons of meat, and the train-loads of

bones which have been actually utilized by man. Nor can the effect of

the bison's presence upon the general development of the great West ever

be calculated. It has sunk into the great sum total of our progress, and

well nigh lost to sight forever.

As a mere suggestion of the immense value of "the buffalo product" at

the time when it had an existence, I have obtained from two of our

leading fur houses in New York City, with branches elsewhere, a detailed

statement of their business in buffalo robes and hides during the last

few years of the trade. They not only serve to show the great value of

the share of the annual crop that passed through their hands, but that

of Messrs. J. & A. Boskowitz is of especial value, because, being

carefully itemized throughout, it shows the decline and final failure of

the trade in exact figures. I am under many obligations to both these

firms for their kindness in furnishing the facts I desired, and

especially to the Messrs. Boskowitz, who devoted considerable time and

labor to the careful compilation of the annexed statement of their

business in buffalo skins.

\_Memorandum of buffalo robes and hides bought by Messrs J. & A.

Boskowitz, 101-105 Greene Street, New York, and 202 Lake street,

Chicago, from 1876 to 1884.\_

+----------------------------------------+

|Year | Buffalo robes. | Buffalo hides. |

| |Number.| Cost. | Number.|Cost. |

+-----+-------+---------+--------+-------+

|1876 | 31,838| $39,620| None.| ... |

|1877 | 9,353| 35,560| None.| ... |

|1878 | 41,268| 150,600| None.| ... |

|1879 | 28,613| 110,420| None.| ... |

|1880 | 34,901| 176,200| 4,570|$13,140|

|1881 | 23,355| 151,800| 26,601| 89,030|

|1882 | 2,124| 15,600| 15,464| 44,140|

|1883 | 6,690| 29,770| 21,869| 67,190|

|1884 | None.| ...| 529| 1,720|

+-----+-------+---------+--------+-------+

|Total|177,142|$709,570 | 69,033|215,220|

+----------------------------------------+

Total number of buffalo skins handled in nine years, 246,175; total

cost, $924,790.

I have also been favored with some very interesting facts and figures

regarding the business done in buffalo skins by the firm of Mr. Joseph

Ullman, exporter and importer of furs and robes, of 165-107 Mercer

street, New York, and also 353 Jackson street, St. Paul, Minnesota. The

following letter was written me by Mr. Joseph Ullman on November 12,

1887, for which I am greatly indebted:

"Inasmuch as you particularly desire the figures for the years 1880-'86,

I have gone through my buffalo robe and hide accounts of those years,

and herewith give you approximate figures, as there are a good many

things to be considered which make it difficult to give exact figures.

"In 1881 we handled about 14,000 hides, average cost about $3.50, and

12,000 robes, average cost about $7.50.

"In 1882 we purchased between 35,000 and 40,000 hides, at an average

cost of about $3.50, and about 10,000 robes, at an average cost of about

$8.50.

"In 1883 we purchased from 6,000 to 7,000 hides and about 1,500 to 2,000

robes at a slight advance in price against the year previous.

"In 1884 we purchased less than 2,500 hides, and in my opinion these

were such as were carried over from the previous season in the

Northwest, and were not fresh-slaughtered skins. The collection of robes

this season was also comparatively small, and nominally robes carried

over from 1883.

"In 1885 the collection of hides amounted to little or nothing.

"The aforesaid goods were all purchased direct in the Northwest, that is

to say, principally in Montana, and shipped in care of our branch house

at St. Paul, Minnesota, to Joseph Ullman, Chicago. The robes mentioned

above were Indian-tanned robes and were mainly disposed of to the

jobbing trade both East and West.

"In 1881 and the years prior, the hides were divided into two kinds,

viz, robe hides, which were such as had a good crop of fur and were

serviceable for robe purposes, and the heavy and short-furred bull

hides. The former were principally sold to the John S. Way Manufacturing

Company, Bridgeport, Connecticut, and to numerous small robe tanners,

while the latter were sold for leather purposes to various hide-tanners

throughout the United States and Canada, and brought 51/2 to 81/2 cents per

pound. A very large proportion of these latter were tanned by the Wilcox

Tanning Company, Wilcox, Pennsylvania.

"About the fall of 1882 we established a tannery for buffalo robes in

Chicago, and from that time forth we tanned all the good hides which we

received into robes and disposed of them in the same manner as the

Indian-tanned robes.

"I don't know that I am called upon to express an opinion as to the

benefit or disadvantage of the extermination of the buffalo, but

nevertheless take the liberty to say that I think that some proper law

restricting the unpardonable slaughter of the buffalo should have been

enacted at the time. It is a well-known fact that soon after the

Northern Pacific Railroad opened up that portion of the country, thereby

making the transportation of the buffalo hides feasible, that is to say,

reducing the cost of freight, thousands upon thousands of buffaloes were

killed for the sake of the hide alone, while the carcasses were left to

rot on the open plains.

"The average prices paid the buffalo hunters [from 1880 to 1884] was

about as follows: For cow hides [robes!], $3; bull hides, $2.50;

yearlings, $1.50; calves, 75 cents; and the cost of getting the hides to

market brought the cost up to about $3.50 per hide."

The amount actually paid out by Joseph Ullman, in four years, for

buffalo robes and hides was about $310,000, and this, too, long after

the great southern herd had ceased to exist, and when the northern herd

furnished the sole supply. It thus appears that during the course of

eight years business (leaving out the small sum paid out in 1884), on

the part of the Messrs. Boskowitz, and four years on that of Mr. Joseph

Ullman, these two firms alone paid out the enormous sum of $1,233,070

for buffalo robes and hides which they purchased to sell again at a good

profit. By the time their share of the buffalo product reached the

consumers it must have represented an actual money value of about

$2,000,000.

Besides these two firms there were at that time many others who also

handled great quantities of buffalo skins and hides for which they paid

out immense sums of money. In this country the other leading firms

engaged in this business were I. G. Baker & Co., of Fort Benton; P. B.

Weare & Co., Chicago; Obern, Hoosick & Co., Chicago and Saint Paul;

Martin Bates & Co., and Messrs. Shearer, Nichols & Co. (now Hurlburt,

Shearer & Sanford), of New York. There were also many others whose names

I am now unable to recall.

In the British Possessions and Canada the frontier business was largely

monopolized by the Hudson's Bay Fur Company, although the annual

"output" of robes and hides was but small in comparison with that

gathered in the United States, where the herds were far more numerous.

Even in their most fruitful locality for robes--the country south of the

Saskatchewan--this company had a very powerful competitor in the firm of

I. G. Baker & Co., of Fort Benton, which secured the lion's share of the

spoil and sent it down the Missouri River.

It is quite certain that the utilization of the buffalo product, even so

far as it was accomplished, resulted in the addition of several millions

of dollars to the wealth of the people of the United States. That the

total sum, could it be reckoned up, would amount to at least fifteen

millions, seems reasonably certain; and my own impression is that twenty

millions would be nearer the mark. It is much to be regretted that the

exact truth can never be known, for in this age of universal slaughter a

knowledge of the cash value of the wild game of the United States that

has been killed up to date might go far toward bringing about the actual

as well as the theoretical protection of what remains.

\* \* \* \* \*

UTILIZATION OF THE BUFFALO BY WHITE MEN.

\_Robes.\_--Ordinarily the skin of a large ruminant is of little value in

comparison with the bulk of toothsome flesh it covers. In fattening

domestic cattle for the market, the value of the hide is so

insignificant that it amounts to no more than a butcher's perquisite in

reckoning up the value of the animal. With the buffalo, however, so

enormous was the waste of the really available product that probably

nine-tenths of the total value derived from the slaughter of the animal

came from his skin alone. Of this, about four-fifths came from the

utilization of the furry robe and one-fifth from skins classed as

"hides," which were either taken in the summer season, when the hair was

very short or almost absent, and used for the manufacture of leather and

leather goods, or else were the poorly-furred skins of old bulls.

The season for robe-taking was from October 15 to February 15, and a

little later in the more northern latitudes. In the United States the

hair of the buffalo was still rather short up to the first of November;

but by the middle of November it was about at its finest as to length,

density, color, and freshness. The Montana hunters considered that the

finest robes were those taken from November 15 to December 15. Before

the former date the hair had not quite attained perfection in length,

and after the latter it began to show wear and lose color. The winter

storms of December and January began to leave their mark upon the robes

by the 1st of February, chiefly by giving the hair a bleached and

weathered appearance. By the middle of February the pelage was decidedly

on the wane, and the robe-hunter was also losing his energy. Often,

however, the hunt was kept up until the middle of March, until either

the deterioration of the quality of the robe, the migration of the herds

northward, or the hunter's longing to return "to town" and "clean up,"

brought the hunt to an end.

On the northern buffalo range, the hunter, or "buffalo skinner," removed

the robe in the following manner:

When the operator had to do his work alone, which was almost always the

case, he made haste to skin his victims while they were yet warm, if

possible, and before \_rigor mortis\_ had set in; but, at all hazards,

before they should become hard frozen. With a warm buffalo he could

easily do his work single-handed, but with one rigid or frozen stiff it

was a very different matter.

His first act was to heave the carcass over until it lay fairly upon its

back, with its feet up in the air. To keep it in that position he

wrenched the head violently around to one side, close against the

shoulder, at the point where the hump was highest and the tendency to

roll the greatest, and used it very effectually as a chock to keep the

body from rolling back upon its side. Having fixed the carcass in

position he drew forth his steel, sharpened his sharp-pointed

"ripping-knife," and at once proceeded to make all the opening cuts in

the skin. Each leg was girdled to the bone, about 8 inches above the

hoof, and the skin of the leg ripped open from that point along the

inside to the median line of the body. A long, straight cut was then

made along the middle of the breast and abdomen, from the root of the

tail to the chin. In skinning cows and young animals, nothing but the

skin of the forehead and nose was left on the skull, the skin of the

throat and cheeks being left on the hide; but in skinning old bulls, on

whose heads the skin was very thick and tough, the whole head was left

unskinned, to save labor and time. The skin of the neck was severed in a

circle around the neck, just behind the ears. It is these huge heads of

bushy brown hair, looking, at a little distance, quite black, in sharp

contrast with the ghastly whiteness of the perfect skeletons behind

them, which gives such a weird and ghostly appearance to the lifeless

prairies of Montana where the bone-gatherer has not yet done his perfect

work. The skulls of the cows and young buffaloes are as clean and bare

as if they had been carefully macerated, and bleached by a skilled

osteologist.

[Illustration: FIG. 1. A DEAD BULL. From a photograph by L. A. Huffman.]

[Illustration: FIG. 2. BUFFALO SKINNERS AT WORK. From a photograph by

L. A. Huffman.]

The opening cuts having been made, the broad-pointed "skinning-knife"

was duly sharpened, and with it the operator fell to work to detach the

skin from the body in the shortest possible time. The tail was always

skinned and left on the hide. As soon as the skin was taken off it was

spread out on a clean, smooth, and level spot of ground, and stretched

to its fullest extent, inside uppermost. On the northern range, very few

skins were "pegged out," \_i. e.\_, stretched thoroughly and held by means

of wooden pegs driven through the edges of the skin into the earth. It

was practiced to a limited extent on the southern range during the

latter part of the great slaughter, when buffaloes were scarce and time

abundant. Ordinarily, however, there was no time for pegging, nor were

pegs available on the range to do the work with. A warm skin stretched

on the curly buffalo-grass, hair side down, sticks to the ground of

itself until it has ample time to harden. On the northern range the

skinner always cut the initials of his outfit in the thin subcutaneous

muscle which was always found adhering to the skin on each side, and

which made a permanent and very plain mark of ownership.

In the south, the traders who bought buffalo robes on the range

sometimes rigged up a rude press, with four upright posts and a huge

lever, in which robes that had been folded into a convenient size were

pressed into bales, like bales of cotton. These could be transported by

wagon much more economically than could loose robes. An illustration of

this process is given in an article by Theodore R. Davis, entitled "The

Buffalo Range," in \_Harper's Magazine\_ for January, 1869, Vol. xxxviii,

p. 163. The author describes the process as follows:

"As the robes are secured, the trader has them arranged in lots of ten

each, with but little regard for quality other than some care that

particularly fine robes do not go too many in one lot. These piles are

then pressed into a compact bale by means of a rudely constructed affair

composed of saplings and a chain."

On the northern range, skins were not folded until the time came to haul

them in. Then the hunter repaired to the scene of his winter's work,

with a wagon surmounted by a hay-rack (or something like it), usually

drawn by four horses. As the skins were gathered up they were folded

once, lengthwise down the middle, with the hair inside. Sometimes as

many as 100 skins were hauled at one load by four horses.

On one portion of the northern range the classification of buffalo

peltries was substantially as follows: Under the head \_of robes\_ was

included all cow skins taken during the proper season, from one year old

upward, and all bull skins from one to three years old. Bull skins over

three years of age were classed as \_hides\_, and while the best of them

were finally tanned and used as robes, the really poor ones were

converted into leather. The large robes, when tanned, were used very

generally throughout the colder portions of North America as sleigh

robes and wraps, and for bedding in the regions of extreme cold. The

small robes, from the young animals, and likewise many large robes, were

made into overcoats, at once the warmest and the most cumbersome that

ever enveloped a human being. Thousands of old bull robes were tanned

with the hair on, and the body portions were made into overshoes, with

the woolly hair inside--absurdly large and uncouth, but very warm.

I never wore a pair of buffalo overshoes without being torn by

conflicting emotions--mortification at the ridiculous size of my

combined foot-gear, big boots inside of huge overshoes, and supreme

comfort derived from feet that were always warm.

Besides the ordinary robe, the hunters and fur buyers of Montana

recognized four special qualities, as follows:

The "beaver robe," with exceedingly fine, wavy fur, the color of a

beaver, and having long, coarse, straight hairs coming through it. The

latter were of course plucked out in the process of manufacture. These

were very rare. In 1882 Mr. James McNaney took one, a cow robe, the only

one out of 1,200 robes taken that season, and sold it for $75, when

ordinary robes fetched only $3.50.

The "black-and-tan robe" is described as having the nose, flanks, and

inside of fore legs black-and-tan (whatever that may mean), while the

remainder of the robe is jet black.

A "buckskin robe" is from what is always called a "white buffalo," and

is in reality a dirty cream color instead of white. A robe of this

character sold in Miles City in 1882 for $200, and was the only one of

that character taken on the northern range during that entire winter. A

very few pure white robes have been taken, so I have been told, chiefly

by Indians, but I have never seen one.

A "blue robe" or "mouse-colored (?) robe" is one on which the body color

shows a decidedly bluish cast, and at the same time has long, fine fur.

Out of his 1,200 robes taken in 1882, Mr. McNaney picked out 12 which

passed muster as the much sought for blue robes, and they sold at $16

each.

As already intimated, the price paid on the range for ordinary buffalo

skins varied according to circumstances, and at different periods, and

in different localities, ranged all the way from 65 cents to $10. The

latter figure was paid in Texas in 1887 for the last lot of "robes" ever

taken. The lowest prices ever paid were during the tremendous slaughter

which annihilated the southern herd. Even as late as 1876, in the

southern country, cow robes brought on the range only from 65 to 90

cents, and bull robes $1.15. On the northern range, from 1881 to 1883,

the prices paid were much higher, ranging from $2.50 to $4.

[Illustration: FIG. 1. FIVE MINUTES' WORK. Photographed by L. A. Huffman.]

[Illustration: FIG. 2. SCENE ON THE NORTHERN BUFFALO RANGE. Photographed

by L. A. Huffman.]

A few hundred dressed robes still remain in the hands of some of the

largest fur dealers in New York, Chicago, and Montreal, which can be

purchased at prices much lower than one would expect, considering the

circumstances. In 1888, good robes, Indian tanned, were offered in New

York at prices ranging from $15 to $30, according to size and quality,

but in Montreal no first-class robes were obtainable at less than $40.

\_Hides.\_--Next in importance to robes was the class of skins known

commercially as hides. Under this head were classed all skins which for

any reason did not possess the pelage necessary to a robe, and were

therefore fit only for conversion into leather. Of these, the greater

portion consisted of the skins of old bulls on which the hair was of

poor quality and the skin itself too thick and heavy to ever allow of

its being made into a soft, pliable, and light-weight robe. The

remaining portion of the hides marketed were from buffaloes killed in

spring and summer, when the body and hindquarters ware almost naked.

Apparently the quantity of summer-killed hides marketed was not very

great, for it was only the meanest and most unprincipled ones of the

grand army of buffalo-killers who were mean enough to kill buffaloes in

summer simply for their hides. It is said that at one time

summer-killing was practiced on the southern range to an extent that

became a cause for alarm to the great body of more respectable hunters,

and the practice was frowned upon so severely that the wretches who

engaged in it found it wise to abandon it.

\_Bones.\_--Next in importance to robes and hides was the bone product,

the utilization of which was rendered possible by the rigorous climate

of the buffalo plains. Under the influence of the wind and sun and the

extremes of heat and cold, the flesh remaining upon a carcass dried up,

disintegrated, and fell to dust, leaving the bones of almost the entire

skeleton as clean and bare as if they had been stripped of flesh by some

powerful chemical process. Very naturally, no sooner did the live

buffaloes begin to grow scarce than the miles of bleaching' bones

suggested the idea of finding a use for them. A market was readily found

for them in the East, and the prices paid per ton were sufficient to

make the business of bone-gathering quite remunerative. The bulk of the

bone product was converted into phosphate for fertilizing purposes, but

much of it was turned into carbon for use in the refining of sugar.

The gathering of bones became a common industry as early as 1872, during

which year 1,135,300 pounds were shipped over the Atchison, Topeka and

Santa Fé Railroad. In the year following the same road shipped 2,743,100

pounds, and in 1874 it handled 6,914,950 pounds more. This trade

continued from that time on until the plains have been gleaned so far

back from the railway lines that it is no longer profitable to seek

them. For that matter, however, it is said that south of the Union

Pacific nothing worth the seeking now remains.

The building of the Northern Pacific Railway made possible the shipment

of immense quantities of dry bones. Even as late as 1886 overland

travelers saw at many of the stations between Jamestown, Dakota, and

Billings, Montana, immense heaps of bones lying alongside the track

awaiting shipment. In 1885 a single firm shipped over 200 tons of bones

from Miles City.

The valley of the Missouri River was gleaned by teamsters who gathered

bones from as far back as 100 miles and hauled them to the river for

shipment on the steamers. An operator who had eight wagons in the

business informed me that in order to ship bones on the river steamers

it was necessary to crush them, and that for crushed bones, shipped in

bags, a Michigan fertilizer company paid $18 per ton. Uncrushed bones,

shipped by the railway, sold for $12 per ton.

It is impossible to ascertain the total amount or value of the bone

product, but it is certain that it amounted to many thousand tons, and

in value must have amounted to some hundreds of thousands of dollars.

But for the great number of railroads, river steamers, and sea-going

vessels (from Texas ports) engaged in carrying this product, it would

have cut an important figure in the commerce of the country, but owing

to the many interests between which it was divided it attracted little

attention.

\_Meat.\_--The amount of fresh buffalo meat cured and marketed was really

very insignificant. So long as it was to be had at all it was so very

abundant that it was worth only from 2 to 3 cents per pound in the

market, and many reasons combined to render the trade in fresh buffalo

meat anything but profitable. Probably not more than one one-thousandth

of the buffalo meat that might have been saved and utilized was saved.

The buffalo carcasses that were wasted on the great plains every year

during the two great periods of slaughter (of the northern and southern

herds) would probably have fed to satiety during the entire time more

than a million persons.

As to the quality of buffalo meat, it may be stated in general terms

that it differs in no way whatever from domestic beef of the same age

produced by the same kind of grass. Perhaps there is no finer grazing

ground in the world than Montana, and the beef it produces is certainly

entitled to rank with the best. There are many persons who claim to

recognize a difference between the taste of buffalo meat and domestic

beef; but for my part I do not believe any difference really exists,

unless it is that the flesh of the buffalo is a little sweeter and more

juicy. As for myself, I feel certain I could not tell the difference

between the flesh of a three-year old buffalo and that of a domestic

beef of the same age, nor do I believe any one else could, even on a

wager. Having once seen a butcher eat an elephant steak in the belief

that it was beef from his own shop, and another butcher eat \_loggerhead

turtle\_ steak for beef, I have become somewhat skeptical in regard to

the intelligence of the human palate.

As a matter of experiment, during our hunt for buffalo we had buffalo

meat of all ages, from one year up to eleven, cooked in as many

different ways as our culinary department could turn out. We had it

broiled, fried with batter, roasted, boiled, and stewed. The last

method, when employed upon slices of meat that had been hacked from a

frozen hind-quarter, produced results that were undeniably tough and not

particularly good. But it was an unfair way to cook any kind of meat,

and may be guarantied to spoil the finest beef in the world.

Hump meat from a cow buffalo not too old, cut in slices and fried in

batter, \_a la cowboy\_, is delicious--a dish fit for the gods. We had

tongues in plenty, but the ordinary meat was so good they were not half

appreciated. Of course the tenderloin was above criticism, and even the

round steaks, so lightly esteemed by the epicure, were tender and juicy

to a most satisfactory degree.

It has been said that the meat of the buffalo has a coarser texture or

"grain" than domestic beef. Although I expected to find such to be the

case, I found no perceptible difference whatever, nor do I believe that

any exists. As to the distribution of fat I am unable to say, for the

reason that our buffaloes were not fat.

It is highly probable that the distribution of fat through the meat, so

characteristic of the shorthorn breeds, and which has been brought about

only by careful breeding, is not found in either the beef of the buffalo

or common range cattle. In this respect, shorthorn beef no doubt

surpasses both the others mentioned, but in all other points, texture,

flavor, and general tenderness, I am very sure it does not.

It is a great mistake for a traveler to kill a patriarchal old bull

buffalo, and after attempting to masticate a small portion of him to

rise up and declare that buffalo meat is coarse, tough, and dry. A

domestic bull of the same age would taste as tough. It is probably only

those who have had the bad taste to eat bull-beef who have ever found

occasion to asperse the reputation of \_Bison americanus\_ as a beef

animal.

Until people got tired of them, buffalo tongues were in considerable

demand, and hundreds, if not even thousands, of barrels of them were

shipped east from the buffalo country.

\_Pemmican.\_--Out of the enormous waste of good buffalo flesh one product

stands forth as a redeeming feature--pemmican. Although made almost

exclusively by the half-breeds and Indians of the Northwest it

constituted a regular article of commerce of great value to overland

travelers, and was much sought for as long as it was produced. Its

peculiar "staying powers," due to the process of its manufacture, which

yielded a most nourishing food in a highly condensed form, made it of

inestimable value to the overland traveler who must travel light or not

at all. A handful of pemmican was sufficient food to constitute a meal

when provisions were at all scarce. The price of pemmican in Winnipeg

was once as low as 2d. per pound, but in 1883 a very small quantity

which was brought in sold at 10 cents per pound. This was probably the

last buffalo pemmican made. H. M. Robinson states that in 1878 pemmican

was worth 1s. 3d. per pound.

The manufacture of pemmican, as performed by the Red River half-breeds,

was thus described by the Rev. Mr. Belcourt, a Catholic priest, who once

accompanied one of the great buffalo-hunting expeditions:[45]

[Note 45: Schoolcraft's History, Condition and Prospects of the Indian

Tribes, iv, p. 107.]

"Other portions which are destined to be made into pimikehigan, or

pemmican, are exposed to an ardent heat, and thus become brittle and

easily reducible to small particles by the use of a flail, the

buffalo-hide answering the purpose of a threshing-floor. The fat or

tallow, being cut up and melted in large kettles of sheet iron, is

poured upon this pounded meat, and the whole mass is worked together

with shovels until it is well amalgamated, when it is pressed, while

still warm, into bags made of buffalo skin, which are strongly sewed up,

and the mixture gradually cools and becomes almost as hard as a rock. If

the fat used in this process is that taken from the parts containing the

udder, the meat is called fine pemmican. In some cases, dried fruits,

such as the prairie pear and cherry, are intermixed, which forms what is

called seed pemmican. Tho lovers of good eating judge the first

described to be very palatable; the second, better; the third,

excellent. A taurean of pemmican weighs from 100 to 110 pounds. Some

idea may be formed of the immense destruction of buffalo by these people

when it is stated that a whole cow yields one-half a bag of pemmican and

three fourths of a bundle of dried meat; so that the most economical

calculate that from eight to ten cows are required for the load of a

single vehicle."

It is quite evident from the testimony of disinterested travelers that

ordinary pemmican was not very palatable to one unaccustomed to it as a

regular article of food. To the natives, however, especially the

Canadian \_voyageur\_, it formed one of the most valuable food products of

the country, and it is said that the demand for it was generally greater

than the supply.

\_Dried, or "jerked" meat.\_--The most popular and universal method of

curing buffalo meat was to cut it into thin flakes, an inch or less in

thickness and of indefinite length, and without salting it in the least

to hang it over poles, ropes, wicker-frames, or even clumps of standing

sage brush, and let it dry in the sun. This process yielded the famous

"jerked" meat so common throughout the West in the early days, from the

Rio Grande to the Saskatchewan. Father Belcourt thus described the

curing process as it was practiced by the half-breeds and Indians of the

Northwest:

"The meat, when taken to camp, is cut by the women into long strips

about a quarter of an inch thick, which are hung upon the lattice-work

prepared for that purpose to dry. This lattice-work is formed of small

pieces of wood, placed horizontally, transversely, and equidistant from

each other, not unlike an immense gridiron, and is supported by wooden

uprights (trepieds). In a few days the meat is thoroughly desiccated,

when it is bent into proper lengths and tied into bundles of 60 or 70

pounds weight. This is called dried meat (viande seche). To make the

hide into parchment (so called) it is stretched on a frame, and then

scraped on the inside with a piece of sharpened bone and on the outside

with a small but sharp-curved iron, proper to remove the hair. This is

considered, likewise, the appropriate labor of women. The men break the

bones, which are boiled in water to extract the marrow to be used for

frying and other culinary purposes. The oil is then poured into the

bladder of the animal, which contains, when filled, about 12 pounds,

being the yield of the marrow-bones of two buffaloes."

In the Northwest Territories dried meat, which formerly sold at 2\_d.\_

per pound, was worth in 1878 10\_d.\_ per pound.

Although I have myself prepared quite a quantity of jerked buffalo meat,

I never learned to like it. Owing to the absence of salt in its curing,

the dried meat when pounded and made into a stew has a "far away" taste

which continually reminds one of hoofs and horns. For all that, and

despite its resemblance in flavor to Liebig's Extract of Beef, it is

quite good, and better to the taste than ordinary pemmican.

The Indians formerly cured great quantities of buffalo meat in this

way--in summer, of course, for use in winter--but the advent of that

popular institution called "Government beef" long ago rendered it

unnecessary for the noble red man to exert his squaw in that once

honorable field of labor.

During the existence of the buffalo herds a few thrifty and enterprising

white men made a business of killing buffaloes in summer and drying the

meat in bulk, in the same manner which to-day produces our popular

"dried beef." Mr. Allen states that "a single hunter at Hays City

shipped annually for some years several hundred barrels thus prepared,

which the consumers probably bought for ordinary beef."

\_Uses of bison's hair.\_--Numerous attempts have been made to utilize the

woolly hair of the bison in the manufacture of textile fabrics. As early

as 1729 Col. William Byrd records the fact that garments were made of

this material, as follows:

"The Hair growing upon his Head and Neck is long and Shagged, and so

Soft that it will spin into Thread not unlike Mohair, and might be wove

into a sort of Camlet. Some People have Stockings knit of it, that would

have served an Israelite during his forty Years march thro' the

Wilderness."[46]

[Note 46: Westover MSS., i, p. 172.]

In 1637 Thomas Morton published, in his "New English Canaan," p. 98,[47]

the following reference to the Indians who live on the southern shore of

Lake Erocoise, supposed to be Lake Ontario:

[Note 47: Quoted by Professor Allen, "American Bisons," p. 107.]

"These Beasts [buffaloes, undoubtedly] are of the bignesse of a Cowe,

their flesh being very good foode, their hides good lether, their

fleeces very usefull, being a kind of wolle, as fine as the wolle of the

Beaver, and the Salvages doe make garments thereof."

Professor Allen quotes a number of authorities who have recorded

statements in regard to the manufacture of belts, garters, scarfs,

sacks, etc., from buffalo wool by various tribes of Indians.[48] He also

calls attention to the only determined efforts ever made by white men on

a liberal scale for the utilization of buffalo "wool" and its

manufacture into cloth, an account of which appears in Ross's "Red River

Settlement," pp. 69-72. In 1821 some of the more enterprising of the Red

River (British) colonists conceived the idea of making fortunes out of

the manufacture of woolen goods from the fleece of the buffalo, and for

that purpose organized the Buffalo Wool Company, the principal object of

which was declared to be "to provide a substitute for wool, which

substitute was to be the wool of the wild buffalo, which was to be

collected in the plains and manufactured both for the use of the

colonists and for export." A large number of skilled workmen of various

kinds were procured from England, and also a plant of machinery and

materials. When too late, it was found that the supply of buffalo wool

obtainable was utterly insufficient, the raw wool costing the company

1\_s.\_ 6\_d.\_ per pound, and cloth which it cost the company £2 10\_s.\_

per yard to produce was worth only 4\_s.\_ 6\_d.\_ per yard in England. The

historian states that universal drunkenness on the part of all concerned

aided very materially in bringing about the total failure of the

enterprise in a very short time.

[Note 48: The American Bison, p. 197.]

While it is possible to manufacture the fine, woolly fur of the bison

into cloth or knitted garments, provided a sufficient supply of the raw

material could be obtained (which is and always has been impossible),

nothing could be more visionary than an attempt to thus produce salable

garments at a profit.

Articles of wearing apparel made of buffalo's hair are interesting as

curiosities, for their rarity makes them so, but that is the only end

they can ever serve so long as there is a sheep living.

In the National Museum, in the section of animal products, there is

displayed a pair of stockings made in Canada from the finest buffalo

wool, from the body of the animal. They are thick, heavy, and full of

the coarse, straight hairs, which it seems can never be entirely

separated from the fine wool. In general texture they are as coarse as

the coarsest sheep's wool would produce.

With the above are also displayed a rope-like lariat, made by the

Comanche Indians, and a smaller braided lasso, seemingly a sample more

than a full-grown lariat, made by the Otoe Indians of Nebraska. Both of

the above are made of the long, dark-brown hair of the head and

shoulders, and in spite of the fact that they have been twisted as hard

as possible, the ends of the hairs protrude so persistently that the

surface of each rope is extremely hairy.

\_Buffalo chips.\_--Last, but by no means least in value to the traveler

on the treeless plains, are the droppings of the buffalo, universally

known as "buffalo chips." When over one year old and thoroughly dry,

this material makes excellent fuel. Usually it occurs only where

fire-wood is unobtainable, and thousands of frontiersmen have a million

times found it of priceless value. When dry, it catches easily, burns

readily, and makes a hot fire with but very little smoke, although it is

rapidly consumed. Although not as good for a fire as even the poorest

timber it is infinitely better than sage-brush, which, in the absence of

chips, is often the traveler's last resort.

It usually happens that chips are most-abundant in the sheltered

creek-bottoms and near the water-holes, the very situations which

travelers naturally select for their camps. In these spots the herds

have gathered either for shelter in winter or for water in summer, and

remained in a body for some hours. And now, when the cowboy on the

round-up, the surveyor, or hunter, who must camp out, pitches his tent

in the grassy coulée or narrow creek-bottom, his first care is to start

out with his largest gunning bag to "rustle some buffalo chips" for a

campfire. He, at least, when he returns well laden with the spoil of his

humble chase, still has good reason to remember the departed herd with

feelings of gratitude. Thus even the last remains of this most useful

animal are utilized by man in providing for his own imperative wants.

IX. THE PRESENT VALUE OF THE BISON TO CATTLE-GROWERS.

\_The bison in captivity and domestication.\_--Almost from time immemorial

it has been known that the American bison takes kindly to captivity,

herds contentedly with domestic cattle, and crosses with them with the

utmost readiness. It was formerly believed, and indeed the tradition

prevails even now to quite an extent, that on account of the hump on the

shoulders a domestic cow could not give birth to a half-breed calf. This

belief is entirely without foundation, and is due to theories rather

than facts.

Numerous experiments in buffalo breeding have been made, and the subject

is far from being a new one. As early as 1701 the Huguenot settlers at

Manikintown, on the James River, a few miles above Richmond, began to

domesticate buffaloes. It is also a matter of historical record that in

1786, or thereabouts, buffaloes were domesticated and bred in captivity

in Virginia, and Albert Gallatin states that in some of the northwestern

counties the mixed breed was quite common. In 1815 a series of elaborate

and valuable experiments in cross-breeding the buffalo and domestic

cattle was begun by Mr. Robert Wickliffe, of Lexington, Ky., and

continued by him for upwards of thirty years.[49]

[Note 49: For a full account of Mr. Wickliffe's experiments, written

by himself, see Audubon and Bachman's "Quadrupeds of North America,"

vol. ii, pp. 52-54.]

Quite recently the buffalo-breeding operations of Mr. S. L. Bedson, of

Stony Mountain, Manitoba, and Mr. C. J. Jones, of Garden City, Kans.,

have attracted much attention, particularly for the reason that the

efforts of both these gentlemen have been directed toward the practical

improvement of the present breeds of range cattle. For this reason the

importance of the work in which they are engaged can hardly be

overestimated, and the results already obtained by Mr. Bedson, whose

experiments antedate those of Mr. Jones by several years, are of the

greatest interest to western cattle-growers. Indeed, unless the stock of

pure-blood buffaloes now remaining proves insufficient for the purpose,

I fully believe that we will gradually see a great change wrought in the

character of western cattle by the introduction of a strain of buffalo

blood.

The experiments which have been made thus far prove conclusively that--

(1) The male bison crosses readily with the opposite sex of domestic

cattle, but a buffalo cow has never been known to produce a half-breed

calf.

(2) The domestic cow produces a half-breed calf successfully.

(3) The progeny of the two species is fertile to any extent, yielding

half-breeds, quarter, three-quarter breeds, and so on.

(4) The bison breeds in captivity with perfect regularity and success.

\_Need of an improvement in range cattle.\_--Ever since the earliest days

of cattle-ranching in the West, stockmen have had it in their power to

produce a breed which would equal in beef-bearing qualities the best

breeds to be found upon the plains, and be so much better calculated to

survive the hardships of winter, that their annual losses would have

been very greatly reduced. Whenever there is an unusually severe winter,

such as comes about three times in every decade, if not even oftener,

range cattle perish by thousands. It is an absolute impossibility for

every ranchman who owns several thousand, or even several hundred, head

of cattle to provide hay for them, even during the severest portion of

the winter season, and consequently the cattle must depend wholly upon

their own resources. When the winter is reasonably mild, and the snows

never very deep, nor lying too long at a time on the ground, the cattle

live through the winter with very satisfactory success. Thanks to the

wind, it usually happens that the falling snow is blown off the ridges

as fast as it falls, leaving the grass sufficiently uncovered for the

cattle to feed upon it. If the snow-fall is universal, but not more than

a few inches in depth, the cattle paw through it here and there, and eke

out a subsistence, on quarter rations it may be, until a friendly

chinook wind sets in from the southwest and dissolves the snow as if by

magic in a few hours' time.

But when a deep snow comes, and lies on the ground persistently, week in

and week out, when the warmth of the sun softens and moistens its

surface sufficiently for a returning cold wave to freeze it into a hard

crust, forming a universal wall of ice between the luckless steer and

his only food, the cattle starve and freeze in immense numbers. Being

totally unfitted by nature to survive such unnatural conditions, it is

not strange that they succumb.

Under present conditions the stockman simply stakes his cattle against

the winter elements and takes his chances on the results, which are

governed by circumstances wholly beyond his control. The losses of the

fearful winter of 1886-'87 will probably never be forgotten by the

cattlemen of the great Western grazing ground. In many portions of

Montana and Wyoming the cattlemen admitted a loss of 50 per cent of

their cattle, and in some localities the loss was still greater. The

same conditions are liable to prevail next winter, or any succeeding

winter, and we may yet see more than half the range cattle in the West

perish in a single month.

Yet all this time the cattlemen have had it in their power, by the

easiest and simplest method in the world, to introduce a strain of hardy

native blood in their stock which would have made it capable of

successfully resisting a much greater degree of hunger and cold. It is

really surprising that the desirability of cross-breeding the buffalo

and domestic cattle should for so long a time have been either

overlooked or disregarded. While cattle-growers generally have shown the

greatest enterprise in producing special breeds for milk, for butter, or

for beef, cattle with short horns and cattle with no horns at all, only

two or three men have had the enterprise to try to produce a breed

particularly hardy and capable.

A buffalo can weather storms and outlive hunger and cold which would

kill any domestic steer that ever lived. When nature placed him on the

treeless and blizzard-swept plains, she left him well equipped to

survive whatever natural conditions he would have to encounter. The most

striking feature of his entire \_tout ensemble\_ is his magnificent suit

of hair and fur combined, the warmest covering possessed by any

quadruped save the musk-ox. The head, neck, and fore quarters are

clothed with hide and hair so thick as to be almost, if not entirely,

impervious to cold. The hair on the body and hind quarters is long,

fine, very thick, and of that peculiar woolly quality which constitutes

the best possible protection against cold. Let him who doubts the warmth

of a good buffalo robe try to weather a blizzard with something else,

and then try the robe. The very form of the buffalo--short, thick legs,

and head hung very near the ground--suggests most forcibly a special

fitness to wrestle with mother earth for a living, snow or no snow. A

buffalo will flounder for days through deep snow-drifts without a morsel

of food, and survive where the best range steer would literally freeze

on foot, bolt upright, as hundreds did in the winter of 1886-'87. While

range cattle turn tail to a blizzard and drift helplessly, the buffalo

faces it every time, and remains master of the situation.

It has for years been a surprise to me that Western stockmen have not

seized upon the opportunity presented by the presence of the buffalo to

improve the character of their cattle. Now that there are no longer any

buffalo calves to be had on the plains for the trouble of catching them,

and the few domesticated buffaloes that remain are worth fabulous

prices, we may expect to see a great deal of interest manifested in this

subject, and some costly efforts made to atone for previous lack of

forethought.

\_The character of the buffalo-domestic hybrid.\_--The subjoined

illustration from a photograph kindly furnished by Mr. C. J. Jones,

represents a ten months' old half-breed calf (male), the product of a

buffalo bull and domestic cow. The prepotency of the sire is apparent at

the first glance, and to so marked an extent that the illustration would

pass muster anywhere as having been drawn from a full-blood buffalo. The

head, neck, and hump, and the long woolly hair that covers them,

proclaim the buffalo in every line. Excepting that the hair on the

shoulders (below the hump) is of the same length as that on the body and

hind quarters, there is, so far as one can judge from an excellent

photograph, no difference whatever observable between this lusty young

half-breed and a full blood buffalo calf of the same age and sex. Mr.

Jones describes the color of this animal as "iron-gray," and remarks:

"You will see how even the fur is, being as long on the hind parts as on

the shoulders and neck, very much unlike the buffalo, which is so shaggy

about the shoulders and so thin farther back." Upon this point it is to

be remarked that the hair on the body of a yearling or two year-old

buffalo is always very much longer in proportion to the hair on the

forward parts than it is later in life, and while the shoulder hair is

always decidedly longer than that back of it, during the first two years

the contrast is by no means so very great. A reference to the memoranda

of hair measurements already given will afford precise data on this

point.

In regard to half-breed calves, Mr. Bedson states in a private letter

that "the hump does not appear until several months after birth."

Altogether, the male calf described above so strongly resembles a

pure-blood buffalo as to be generally mistaken for one; the form of the

adult half-blood cow promptly proclaims her origin. The accompanying

plate, also from a photograph supplied by Mr. Jones, accurately

represents a half-breed cow, six years old, weighing about 1,800 pounds.

Her body is very noticeably larger in proportion than that of the cow

buffalo, her pelvis much heavier, broader, and more cow-like, therein

being a decided improvement upon the small and weak hind quarters of the

wild species. The hump is quite noticeable, but is not nearly so high as

in the pure buffalo cow. The hair on the fore quarters, neck, and head

is decidedly shorter, especially on the head; the frontlet and chin

beard being conspicuously lacking. The tufts of long, coarse, black hair

which clothe the fore-arm of the buffalo cow are almost absent, but

apparently the hair on the body and hind quarters has lost but little,

if any, of its length, density, and fine, furry quality. The horns are

decidedly cow-like in their size, length, and curvature.

[Illustration: HALF-BREED (BUFFALO-DOMESTIC) CALF.--HERD OF C. J. JONES,

GARDEN CITY, KANSAS. Drawn by Ernest E. Thompson.]

Regarding the general character of the half-breed buffalo, and his herd

in general, Mr. Bedson writes me as follows, in a letter dated September

12, 1888:

"The nucleus of my herd consisted of a young buffalo bull and four

heifer calves, which I purchased in 1877, and the increase from these

few has been most rapid, as will be shown by a tabular statement farther

on.

"Success with the breeding of the pure buffalo was followed by

experiments in crossing with the domestic animal. This crossing has

generally been between a buffalo bull and an ordinary cow, and with the

most encouraging results, since it had been contended by many that

although the cow might breed a calf from the buffalo, yet it would be at

the expense of her life, owing to the hump on a buffalo's shoulder; but

this hump does not appear until several months after birth. This has

been proved a fallacy respecting \_this herd\_ at least, for calving has

been attended with no greater percentage of losses than would be

experienced in ranching with the ordinary cattle. Buffalo cows and

crosses have dropped calves at as low a temperature as 20° below zero,

and the calves were sturdy and healthy.

"The half breed resulting from the cross as above mentioned has been

again crossed with the thoroughbred buffalo bull, producing a three

quarter breed animal closely resembling the buffalo, the head and robe

being quite equal, if not superior. The half-breeds are very prolific.

The cows drop a calf annually. They are also very hardy indeed, as they

take the instinct of the buffalo during the blizzards and storms, and do

not drift like native cattle. They remain upon the open prairie during

our severest winters, while the thermometer ranges from 30 to 40 degrees

below zero, with little or no food except what they rustled on the

prairie, and no shelter at all. In nearly all the ranching parts of

North America foddering and housing of cattle is imperative in a more or

less degree,[50] creating an item of expense felt by all interested in

cattle-raising; but the buffalo [half]breed retains all its native

hardihood, needs no housing, forages in the deepest snows for its own

food, yet becomes easily domesticated, and consequently needs but little

herding. Therefore the progeny of the buffalo is easily reared, cheaply

fed, and requires no housing in winter; three very essential points in

stock-raising.

[Note 50: On nearly all the great cattle ranches of the United States

it is absolutely impossible, and is not even attempted.--W. T. H.]

"They are always in good order, and I consider the meat of the

half-breed much preferable to domestic animals, while the robe is very

fine indeed, the fur being evened up on the hind parts, the same as on

the shoulders. During the history of the herd, accident and other causes

have compelled the slaughtering of one or two, and in these instances

the carcasses have sold for 18 cents per pound; the hides in their

dressed state for $50 to $75 each. A half-breed buffalo ox (four years

old, crossed with buffalo bull and Durham cow) was killed last winter,

and weighed 1,280 pounds dressed beef. One pure buffalo bull now in my

herd weighs fully 2,000 pounds, and a [half]breed bull 1,700 to 1,800

pounds.

"The three-quarter breed is an enormous animal in size, and has an extra

good robe, which will readily bring $40 to $50 in any market where there

is a demand for robes. They are also very prolific, and I consider them

the coming cattle for our range cattle for the Northern climate, while

the half and quarter breeds will be the animals for the more Southern

district. The half and three-quarter breed cows, when really matured,

will weigh from 1,400 to 1,800 pounds.

"I have never crossed them except with a common grade of cows, while I

believe a cross with the Galloways would produce the handsomest robe

ever handled, and make the best range cattle in the world. I have not

had time to give my attention to my herd, more than to let them range on

the prairies at will. By proper care great results can be accomplished."

Hon. C. J. Jones, of Garden City, Kans., whose years of experience with

the buffalo, both as old-time hunter, catcher, and breeder, has earned

for him the sobriquet of "Buffalo Jones," five years ago became deeply

interested in the question of improving range cattle by crossing with

the buffalo. With characteristic Western energy he has pursued the

subject from that time until the present, having made five trips to the

range of the only buffaloes remaining from the great southern herd, and

captured sixty-eight buffalo calves and eleven adult cows with which to

start a herd. In a short article published in the Farmers' Review

(Chicago, August 22, 1888), Mr. Jones gives his views on the value of

the buffalo in cross-breeding as follows:

"In all my meanderings I have not found a place but I could count more

carcasses [of cattle] than living animals. Who has not ridden over some

of the Western railways and counted dead cattle by the thousands? The

great question is, Where can we get a race of cattle that will stand

blizzards, and endure the drifting snow, and will not be driven with the

storms against the railroad fences and pasture fences, there to perish

for the want of nerve to face the northern winds for a few miles, to

where the winter grasses could be had in abundance? Realizing these

facts, both from observation and pocket, we pulled on our 'thinking

cap,' and these points came vividly to our mind:

"(1) We want an animal that is hardy.

"(2) We want an animal with nerve and endurance.

"(3) We want an animal that faces the blizzards and endures the storms.

"(4) We want an animal that will rustle the prairies, and not yield to

discouragement.

"(5) We want an animal that will fill the above bill, and make good

beef and plenty of it.

[Illustration: HALF-BREED (BUFFALO-DOMESTIC) COW.--HERD OF C. J. JONES,

GARDEN CITY, KANSAS. Drawn by Ernest E. Thompson.]

"All the points above could easily be found in the buffalo, excepting

the fifth, and even that is more than filled as to the quality, but not

in quantity. Where is the 'old timer' who has not had a cut from the

hump or sirloin of a fat buffalo cow in the fall of the year, and where

is the one who will not make affidavit that it was the best meat he ever

ate? Yes, the fat was very rich, equal to the marrow from the bone of

domestic cattle. \* \* \*

"The great question remained unsolved as to the quantity of meat from

the buffalo. I finally heard of a half-breed buffalo in Colorado, and

immediately set out to find it. I traveled at least 1,000 miles to find

it, and found a five-year-old half-breed cow that had been bred to

domestic bulls and had brought forth two calves--a yearling and a

sucking calf that gave promise of great results.

"The cow had never been fed, but depended altogether on the range, and

when I saw her, in the fall of 1883. I estimated her weight at 1,800

pounds. She was a brindle, and had a handsome robe even in September;

she had as good hind quarters as ordinary cattle; her foreparts were

heavy and resembled the buffalo, yet not near so much of the hump. The

offspring showed but very little of the buffalo, yet they possessed a

woolly coat, which showed clearly that they were more than domestic

cattle. \* \* \*

"What we can rely on by having one-fourth, one-half, and three-fourths

breeds might be analyzed as follows:

"We can depend upon a race of cattle unequaled in the world for

hardiness and durability; a good meat-bearing animal; the best and only

fur-bearing animal of the bovine race; the animal always found in a

storm where it is overtaken by it; a race of cattle so clannish as never

to separate and go astray; the animal that can always have free range,

as they exist where no other animal can live; the animal that can water

every third day and keep fat, ranging from 20 to 30 miles from water; in

fact, they are the perfect animal for the plains of North America.

One-fourth breeds for Texas, one-half breeds for Colorado and Kansas,

and three-fourths breeds for more northern country, is what will soon be

sought after more than any living animal. Then we will never be

confronted with dead carcarsses from starvation, exhaustion, and lack of

nerve, as in years gone by."

\_The bison as a beast of burden.\_--On account of the abundance of horses

for all purposes throughout the entire country, oxen are so seldom used

they almost constitute a curiosity. There never has existed a necessity

to break buffaloes to the yoke and work them like domestic oxen, and so

few experiments have been made in this direction that reliable data on

this subject is almost wholly wanting. While at Miles City, Mont., I

heard of a German "granger" who worked a small farm in the Tongue River

Valley, and who once had a pair of cow buffaloes trained to the yoke.

It was said that they were strong, rapid walkers, and capable of

performing as much work as the best domestic oxen, but they were at

times so uncontrollably headstrong and obstinate as to greatly detract

from their usefulness. The particular event of their career on which

their historian dwelt with special interest occurred when their owner

was hauling a load of potatoes to town with them. In the course of the

long drive the buffaloes grew very thirsty, and upon coming within sight

of the water in the river they started for it in a straight course. The

shouts and blows of the driver only served to hasten their speed, and

presently, when they reached the edge of the high bank, they plunged

down it without the slightest hesitation, wagon, potatoes, and all, to

the loss of everything except themselves and the drink they went after!

Mr. Robert Wickliffe states that trained buffaloes make satisfactory

oxen. "I have broken them to the yoke, and found them capable of making

excellent oxen; and for drawing wagons, carts, or other heavily laden

vehicles on long journeys they would, I think, be greatly preferable to

the common ox."

It seems probable that, in the absence of horses, the buffalo would make

a much more speedy and enduring draught animal than the domestic ox,

although it is to be doubted whether he would be as strong. His weaker

pelvis and hind quarters would surely count against him under certain

circumstances, but for some purposes his superior speed and endurance

would more than counterbalance that defect.

BISON HERDS AND INDIVIDUALS IN CAPTIVITY AND DOMESTICATION, JANUARY 1,

1889.

\_Herd of Mr. S. L. Bedson, Stony Mountain, Manitoba.\_--In 1877 Mr.

Bedson purchased 5 buffalo calves, 1 bull, and 4 heifers, for which he

paid $1,000. In 1888 his herd consisted of 23 full-blood bulls, 35 cows,

3 half-breed cows, 5 half-breed bulls, and 17 calves, mixed and

pure;[51] making a total of 83 head. These were all produced from the

original 5, no purchases having been made, nor any additions made in any

other way. Besides the 83 head constituting the herd when it was sold, 5

were killed and 9 given away, which would otherwise make a total of 97

head produced since 1877. In November, 1888, this entire herd was

purchased, for $50,000, by Mr. C. J. Jones, and added to the already

large herd owned by that gentleman in Kansas.

[Note 51: In summing up the total number of buffaloes and mixed-breeds

now alive in captivity, I have been obliged to strike an average on this

lot of calves "mixed and pure," and have counted twelve as being of pure

breed and five mixed, which I have reason to believe is very near the

truth.]

[Illustration: YOUNG HALF-BREED (BUFFALO-DOMESTIC) BULL.--HERD OF C. J.

JONES, GARDEN CITY, KANSAS. Drawn by Ernest E. Thompson.]

\_Herd of Mr. C. J. Jones, Garden City, Kans.\_--Mr. Jones's original herd

of 57 buffaloes constitute a living testimonial to his individual

enterprise, and to his courage, endurance, and skill in the chase. The

majority of the individuals composing the herd he himself ran down,

lassoed, and tied with his own hands. For the last five years Mr. Jones

has made an annual trip, in June, to the uninhabited "panhandle" of

Texas, to capture calves out of the small herd of from one hundred to

two hundred head which represented the last remnant of the great

southern herd. Each of these expeditious involved a very considerable

outlay in money, an elaborate "outfit" of men, horses, vehicles, camp

equipage, and lastly, but most important of all, a herd of a dozen fresh

milch cows to nourish the captured calves and keep them from dying of

starvation and thirst. The region visited was fearfully barren, almost

without water, and to penetrate it was always attended by great

hardship. The buffaloes were difficult to find, but the ground was good

for running, being chiefly level plains, and the superior speed of the

running horses always enabled the hunters to overtake a herd whenever

one was sighted, and to "cut out" and lasso two, three, or four of its

calves. The degree of skill and daring displayed in these several

expeditions are worthy of the highest admiration, and completely surpass

anything I have ever seen or read of being accomplished in connection

with hunting, or the capture of live game. The latest feat of Mr. Jones

and his party comes the nearest to being incredible. During the month of

May, 1888, they not only captured seven calves, but also \_eleven adult

cows\_, of which some were lassoed in full career on the prairie, thrown,

tied, and hobbled! The majority, however, were actually "rounded up,"

herded, and held in control until a bunch of tame buffaloes was driven

down to meet them, so that it would thus be possible to drive all

together to a ranch. This brilliant feat can only be appreciated as it

deserves by those who have lately hunted buffalo, and learned by dear

experience the extent of their wariness, and the difficulties, to say

nothing of the dangers, inseparably connected with their pursuit.

The result of each of Mr. Jones's five expeditions is as follows: In

1884 no calves found; 1885, 11 calves captured, 5 died, 6 survived;

1886, 14 calves captured, 7 died, 7 survived; 1887, 36 calves captured,

6 died, 30 survived; 1888, 7 calves captured, all survived; 1888, 11 old

cows captured, all survived. Total, 79 captures, 18 losses, 57

survivors.

The census of the herd is exactly as follows: Adult cows, 11; three-year

olds, 7, of which 2 are males and 5 females; two-year olds, 4, of which

all are males; yearling, 28, of which 15 are males and 13 females;

calves, 7, of which 3 are males and 4 females. Total herd, 57; 24 males

and 33 females. To this, Mr. Jones's original herd, must now be added

the entire herd formerly owned by Mr. Bedson.

Respecting his breeding operations Mr. Jones writes: "My oldest [bull]

buffaloes are now three years old, and I am breeding one hundred

domestic cows to them this year. Am breeding the Galloway cows quite

extensively; also some Shorthorns, Herefords, and Texas cows. I expect

best results from the Galloways. If I can get the black luster of the

latter and the fur of a buffalo, I will have a robe that will bring more

money than we get for the average range steer."

In November, 1888, Mr. Jones purchased Mr. Bedson's entire herd, and in

the following mouth proceeded to ship a portion of it to Kansas City.

Thirty-three head were separated from the remainder of the herd on the

prairie near Stony Mountain, 12 miles from Winnipeg, and driven to the

railroad. Several old bulls broke away en route and ran back to the

herd, and when the remainder were finally corraled in the pens at the

stock-yards "they began to fight among themselves, and some fierce

encounters were waged between the old bulls. The younger cattle were

raised on the horns of their seniors, thrown in the air, and otherwise

gored." While on the way to St. Paul three of the half-breed buffaloes

were killed by their companions. On reaching Kansas City and unloading

the two cars, 13 head broke away from the large force of men that

attempted to manage them, stampeded through the city, and finally took

refuge in the low-lands along the river. In due time, however, all were

recaptured.

Since the acquisition of this northern herd and the subsequent press

comment that it has evoked, Mr. Jones has been almost overwhelmed with

letters of inquiry in regard to the whole subject of buffalo breeding,

and has found it necessary to print and distribute a circular giving

answers to the many inquiries that have been made.

\_Herd of Mr. Charles Allard, Flathead Indian Reservation,

Montana.\_--This herd was visited in the autumn of 1888 by Mr. G. O.

Shields, of Chicago, who reports that it consists of thirty-five head of

pure-blood buffaloes, of which seven are calves of 1888, six are

yearlings, and six are two-year olds. Of the adult animals, four cows

and two bulls are each fourteen years old, "and the beards of the bulls

almost sweep the ground as they walk."

\_Herd of Hon. W. F. Cody ("Buffalo Bill").\_--The celebrated "Wild West

Show" has, ever since its organization, numbered amongst its leading

attractions a herd of live buffaloes of all ages. At present this herd

contains eighteen head, of which fourteen were originally purchased of

Mr. H. T. Groome, of Wichita, Kansas, and have made a journey to London

and back. As a proof of the indomitable persistence of the bison in

breeding under most unfavorable circumstances, the fact that four of the

members of this herd are calves which were born in 1888 in London, at

the American Exposition, is of considerable interest.

This herd is now (December, 1888) being wintered on General Beale's

farm, near the city of Washington. In 1886-'87, while the Wild West Show

was at Madison Square Garden, New York City, its entire herd of twenty

buffaloes was carried off by pleuro-pneumonia. It is to be greatly

feared that sooner or later in the course of its travels the present

herd will also disappear, either through disease or accident.

\_Herd of Mr. Charles Goodnight, Clarendon, Texas.\_--Mr. Goodnight writes

that he has "been breeding buffaloes in a small way for the past ten

years," but without giving any particular attention to it. At present

his herd consists of thirteen head, of which two are three-year old

bulls and four are calves. There are seven cows of all ages, one of

which is a half-breed.

\_Herd at the Zoological Society's Gardens, Philadelphia, Arthur E.

Brown, superintendent.\_--This institution is the fortunate possessor of

a small herd of ten buffaloes, of which four are males and six females.

Two are calves of 1877. In 1886 the Gardens sold an adult bull and cow

to Hon. W. F. Cody for $300.

\_Herd at Bismarck Grove, Kansas, owned by the Atchison, Topeka and Santa

Fé Railroad Company.\_--A small herd of buffaloes has for several years

past been kept at Bismarck Grove as an attraction to visitors. At

present it contains ten head, one of which is a very large bull, another

in a four-year-old bull, six are cows of various ages, and two are

two-year olds. In 1885 a large bull belonging to this herd grew so

vicious and dangerous that it was necessary to kill him.

The following interesting account of this herd was published in the

Kansas City Times of December 8, 1888:

"Thirteen years ago Colonel Stanton purchased a buffalo bull calf for $8

and two heifers for $25. The descendants of these three buffaloes now

found at Bismarck Grove, where all were born, number in all ten. There

were seventeen, but the rest have died, with the exception of one, which

was given away. They are kept in an inclosure containing about 30 acres

immediately adjoining the park, and there may be seen at any time. The

sight is one well worth a trip and the slight expense that may attach to

it, especially to one who has never seen the American bison in his

native state.

"The present herd includes two fine bull calves dropped last spring, two

heifers, five cows, and a bull six years old and as handsome as a

picture. The latter has been named Cleveland, after the colonel's

favorite Presidential candidate. The entire herd is in as fine condition

as any beef cattle, though they were never fed anything but hay and are

never given any shelter. In fact they don't take kindly to shelter, and

whether a blizzard is blowing, with the mercury 20 degrees below zero,

or the sun pouring down his scorching rays, with the thermometer 110

degrees above, they set their heads resolutely toward storm or sun and

take their medicine as if they liked it. Hon. W. F. Cody, "Buffalo

Bill," tried to buy the whole herd two years ago to take to Europe with

his Wild West Show, but they were not for sale at his own figures, and,

indeed, there is no anxiety to dispose of them at any figures. The

railroad company has been glad to furnish them pasturage for the sake of

adding to the attractions of the park, in which there are also

forty-three head of deer, including two as fine bucks as ever trotted

over the national deer trail toward the salt-licks in northern Utah.

"While the bison at Bismark Grove are splendid specimens of their class,

"Cleveland" is decidedly the pride of the herd, and as grand a creature

as ever trod the soil of Kansas on four legs. He is just six years old

and is a perfect specimen of the kings of the plains. There is royal

blood in his veins, and his coat is finer than the imperial purple. It

is not possible to get at him to measure his stature and weight. He must

weigh fully 3,000 pounds, and it is doubtful if there is to-day living

on the face of the earth a handsomer buffalo bull than he. "Cleveland's"

disposition is not so ugly as old Barney's was, but at certain seasons

he is very wild, and there is no one venturesome enough to go into the

inclosure. It is then not altogether safe to even look over the high and

heavy board fence at him, for he is likely to make a run for the

visitor, as the numerous holes in the fence where he has knocked off the

boards will testify."

\_Herd of Mr. Frederick Dupree, Cheyenne Indian Agency, near Fort

Bennett, Dakota.\_--This herd contains at present nine pure-blood

buffaloes, five of which are cows and seven mixed bloods. Of the former,

there are two adult bulls and four adult cows. Of the mixed blood

animals, six are half-breeds and one a quarter-breed buffalo.

Mr. Dupree obtained the nucleus of his herd in 1882, at which time he

captured five wild calves about 100 miles west of Fort Bennett. Of

these, two died after two months of captivity and a third was killed by

an Indian in 1885.

Mr. D. F. Carlin, of the Indian service, at Fort Bennett, has kindly

furnished me the following information respecting this herd, under date

of November 1, 1888:

"The animals composing this herd are all in fine condition and are quite

tame. They keep by themselves most of the time, except the oldest bull

(six years old), who seems to appreciate the company of domestic cattle

more than that of his own family. Mr. Dupree has kept one half-breed

bull as an experiment; he thinks it will produce a hardy class of

cattle. His half-breeds are all black, with one exception, and that is a

roan; but they are all built like the buffalo, and when young they grunt

more like a hog than like a calf, the same as a full-blood buffalo.

"Mr. Dupree has never lost a [domestic] cow in giving birth to a

half-breed calf, as was supposed by many people would be the case. There

have been no sales from this herd, although the owner has a standing

offer of $650 for a cow and bull. The cows are not for sale at any

price."

\_Herd at Lincoln Park, Chicago, Mr. W. P. Walker, superintendent.\_--This

very interesting and handsomely-kept herd is composed of seven

individuals of the following character: One bull eight years old, one

bull four years old, two cows eight years old, two cows two years old in

the spring of 1888, and one female calf born in the spring of 1888.

\_Zoological Gardens, Cincinnati, Ohio.\_--This collection contains four

bison, an adult bull and cow, and one immature specimen.

\_Dr. V. T. McGillicuddy, Rapid City, Dakota\_, has a herd of four pure

buffaloes and one half-breed. Of the former, the two adults, a bull and

cow seven years old, were caught by Sioux Indians near the Black Hills

for the owner in the spring of 1882. The Indians drove two milch cows to

the range to nourish the calves when caught. These have produced two

calves, one of which, a bull, is now three years old, and the other is a

yearling heifer.

\_Central Park Menagerie, New York, Dr. W. A. Conklin, director.\_--This

much-visited collection contains four bison, an adult bull and cow, a

two-year-old calf, and a yearling.

\_Mr. John H. Starin, Glen Inland, near New York City.\_--There are four

buffaloes at this summer resort.

\_The U. S. National Museum, Washington, District of Columbia.\_--The

collection of the department of living animals at this institution

contains two fine young buffaloes; a bull four years old in July, 1888,

and a cow three years old in May of the same year. These animals were

captured in western Nebraska, when they were calves, by H. R. Jackett,

of Ogalalla, and kept by him on his ranch until 1885. In April, 1888,

Hon. Eugene G. Blackford, of New York, purchased them of Mr. Frederick

D. Nowell, of North Platte, Nebraska, for $100 for the pair, and

presented them to the National Museum, in the hope that they might form

the nucleus of a herd to be owned and exhibited by the United States

Government in or near the city of Washington. The two animals were

received in Ogalalla by Mr. Joseph Palmer, of the National Museum, and

by him they were brought on to Washington in May, in fine condition.

Since their arrival they have been exhibited to the public in a

temporary inclosure on the Smithsonian Grounds, and have attracted much

attention.

\_Mr. B. C. Winston, of Hamline, Minnesota\_, owns a pair of buffaloes,

one of which, a young bull, was caught by him in western Dakota in the

spring of 1886, soon after its birth. The cow was purchased at Rosseau,

Dakota Territory, a year later, for $225.

\_Mr. I. P. Butler, of Colorado, Texas\_, is the owner of a young bull

buffalo and a half-breed calf.

\_Mr. Jesse Huston, of Miles City, Montana\_, owns a fine five-year-old

bull buffalo.

\_Mr. L. F. Gardner, of Bellwood, Oregon\_, is the owner of a large adult

bull.

\_The Riverside Ranch Company, south of Mandan, Dakota\_, owns a pair of

full-blood buffaloes.

\_In Dakota\_, in the hands of parties unknown, there are four full-blood

buffaloes.

\_Mr. James R. Hitch, of Optima, Indian Territory\_, has a pair of young

buffaloes, which he has offered for sale for $750.

\_Mr. Joseph A. Hudson, of Estell, Nebraska\_, owns a three-year-old bull

buffalo, which is for sale.

In other countries there are live specimens of \_Bison americanus\_

reported as follows: two at Belleview Gardens, Manchester, England; one

at the Zoological Gardens, London; one at Liverpool, England (purchased

of Hon. W. F. Cody in 1888); two at the Zoological Gardens, Dresden; one

at the Zoological Gardens, Calcutta.

+--------------------------------------------------+

| \_Statistics of full-blood buffaloes | |

| in captivity January 1, 1889.\_ | |

+---------------------------------------------+----+

|Number kept for breeding purposes | 216|

|Number kept for exhibition | 40|

| | ---|

| Total pure-blood buffaloes in captivity | 256|

|Wild buffaloes under Government | |

|protection in the Yellowstone Park | 200|

|Number of mixed-breed buffalo-domestics | 40|

+--------------------------------------------------+

There are, without doubt, a few half-breeds in Manitoba of which I have

no account. It is probable there are also a very few more captive

buffaloes scattered singly here and there which will be heard of later,

but the total will be a very small number, I am sure.

PART II.--THE EXTERMINATION.

I. CAUSES OF THE EXTERMINATION.

The causes which led to the practical extinction (in a wild state, at

least) of the most economically valuable wild animal that ever inhabited

the American continent, are by no means obscure. It is well that we

should know precisely what they were, and by the sad fate of the buffalo

be warned in time against allowing similar causes to produce the same

results with our elk, antelope, deer, moose, caribou, mountain sheep,

mountain goat, walrus, and other animals. It will be doubly deplorable

if the remorseless slaughter we have witnessed during the last twenty

years carries with it no lessons for the future. A continuation of the

record we have lately made as wholesale game butchers will justify

posterity in dating us back with the mound-builders and cave-dwellers,

when man's only known function was to slay and eat.

The primary cause of the buffalo's extermination, and the one which

embraced all others, was the descent of civilization, with all its

elements of destructiveness, upon the whole of the country inhabited by

that animal. From the Great Slave Lake to the Rio Grande the home of the

buffalo was everywhere overrun by the man with a gun; and, as has ever

been the case, the wild creatures were gradually swept away, the largest

and most conspicuous forms being the first to go.

The secondary causes of the extermination of the buffalo may be

catalogued as follows:

(1) Man's reckless greed, his wanton destructiveness, and improvidence

in not husbanding such resources as come to him from the hand of nature

ready made.

(2) The total and utterly inexcusable absence of protective measures and

agencies on the part of the National Government and of the West States

and Territories.

(3) The fatal preference on the part of hunters generally, both white

and red, for the robe and flesh of the cow over that furnished by the

bull.

(4) The phenomenal stupidity of the animals themselves, and their

indifference to man.

(5) The perfection of modern breech-loading rifles and other sporting

fire-arms in general.

Each of these causes acted against the buffalo with its fall force, to

offset which there was \_not even one\_ restraining or preserving

influence, and it is not to be wondered at that the species went down

before them. Had any one of these conditions been eliminated the result

would have been reached far less quickly. Had the buffalo, for example,

possessed one-half the fighting qualities of the grizzly bear he would

have fared very differently, but his inoffensiveness and lack of courage

almost leads one to doubt the wisdom of the economy of nature so far as

it relates to him.

II. METHODS OF SLAUGHTER.

1. \_The still-hunt.\_--Of all the deadly methods of buffalo slaughter,

the still-hunt was the deadliest. Of all the methods that were

unsportsmanlike, unfair, ignoble, and utterly reprehensible, this was in

every respect the lowest and the worst. Destitute of nearly every

element of the buoyant excitement and spice of danger that accompanied

genuine buffalo hunting on horseback, the still-hunt was mere butchery

of the tamest and yet most cruel kind. About it there was none of the

true excitement of the chase; but there was plenty of greedy eagerness

to "down" as many "head" as possible every day, just as there is in

every slaughter-house where the killers are paid so much per head.

Judging from all accounts, it was about as exciting and dangerous work

as it would be to go out now and shoot cattle on the Texas or Montana

ranges. The probabilities are, however, that shooting Texas cattle would

be the most dangerous; for, instead of running from a man on foot, as

the buffalo used to do, range cattle usually charge down upon him, from

motives of curiosity, perhaps, and not infrequently place his life in

considerable jeopardy.

The buffalo owes his extermination very largely to his own unparalleled

stupidity; for nothing else could by any possibility have enabled the

still-hunters to accomplish what they did in such an incredibly short

time. So long as the chase on horseback was the order of the day, it

ordinarily required the united efforts of from fifteen to twenty-five

hunters to kill a thousand buffalo in a single season; but a single

still-hunter, with a long-range breech-loader, who knew how to make a

"sneak" and get "a stand on a bunch," often succeeded in killing from

one to three thousand in one season by his own unaided efforts. Capt.

Jack Brydges, of Kansas, who was one of the first to begin the final

slaughter of the southern herd, killed, by contract, one thousand one

hundred and forty-two buffaloes in six weeks.

So long as the buffalo remained in large herds their numbers gave each

individual a feeling of dependence upon his fellows and of general

security from harm, even in the presence of strange phenomena which he

could not understand. When he heard a loud report and saw a little cloud

of white smoke rising from a gully, a clump of sage-brash, or the top of

a ridge, 200 yards away, he wondered what it meant, and held himself in

readiness to follow his leader in case she should run away. But when the

leader of the herd, usually the oldest cow, fell bleeding upon the

ground, and no other buffalo promptly assumed the leadership of the

herd, instead of acting independently and fleeing from the alarm, he

merely did as he saw the others do, and waited his turn to be shot.

Latterly, however, when the herds were totally broken up, when the few

survivors were scattered in every direction, and it became a case of

every buffalo for himself, they became wild and wary, ever ready to

start off at the slightest alarm, and run indefinitely. Had they shown

the same wariness seventeen years ago that the survivors have manifested

during the last three or four years, there would now be a hundred

thousand head alive instead of only about three hundred in a wild and

unprotected state.

Notwithstanding the merciless war that had been waged against the

buffalo for over a century by both whites and Indians, and the steady

decrease of its numbers, as well as its range, there were several

million head on foot, not only up to the completion of the Union Pacific

Railway, but as late as the year 1870. Up to that time the killing done

by white men had been chiefly for the sake of meat, the demand for robes

was moderate, and the Indians took annually less than one hundred

thousand for trading. Although half a million buffaloes were killed by

Indians, half-breeds, and whites, the natural increase was so very

considerable as to make it seem that the evil day of extermination was

yet far distant.

But by a coincidence which was fatal to the buffalo, with the building

of three lines of railway through the most populous buffalo country

there came a demand for robes and hides, backed up by an unlimited

supply of new and marvellously accurate breech-loading rifles and fixed

ammunition. And then followed a wild rush of hunters to the buffalo

country, eager to destroy as many head as possible in the shortest time.

For those greedy ones the chase on horseback was "too slow" and too

unfruitful. That was a retail method of killing, whereas they wanted to

kill by wholesale. From their point of view, the still-hunt or "sneak"

hunt was the method \_par excellence\_. If they could have obtained

Gatling guns with which to mow down a whole herd at a time, beyond a

doubt they would have gladly used them.

The still-hunt was seen at its very worst in the years 1871, 1872, and

1873, on the southern buffalo range, and ten years later at its best in

Montana, on the northern. Let us first consider it at its best, which in

principle was bad enough.

The great rise in the price of robes which followed the blotting out of

the great southern herd at once put buffalo-hunting on a much more

comfortable and respectable business basis in the North than it had ever

occupied in the South, where prices had all along been phenomenally low.

In Montana it was no uncommon thing for a hunter to invest from $1,000

to $2,000 in his "outfit" of horses, wagons, weapons, ammunition,

provisions, and sundries.

One of the men who accompanied the Smithsonian Expedition for Buffalo,

Mr. James McNaney, of Miles City, Montana, was an ex-buffalo banter, who

had spent three seasons on the northern range, killing buffalo for their

robes, and his standing as a hunter was of the best. A brief description

of his outfit and its work during its last season on the range

(1882-'83) may fairly be taken as a typical illustration of the life and

work of the still-hunter at its best. The only thing against it was the

extermination of the buffalo.

During the winters of 1880 and 1881 Mr. McNaney had served in Maxwell's

outfit as a hunter, working by the month, but his success in killing was

such that he decided to work the third year on his own account. Although

at that time only seventeen years of age, he took an elder brother as a

partner, and purchased an outfit in Miles City, of which the following

were the principal items: Two wagons, 2 four-horse teams, 2

saddle-horses, 2 wall-tents, 1 cook-stove with pipe, 1 40-90 Sharp's

rifle (breech-loading), 1 45-70 Sharps rifle (breech-loading), 1 45-120

Sharps rifle (breech-loading), 50 pounds gunpowder, 550 pounds lead,

4,500 primers, 600 brass shells, 4 sheets patch-paper, 60 Wilson

skinning knives, 3 butcher's steels, 1 portable grindstone, flour,

bacon, baking-powder, coffee, sugar, molasses, dried apples, canned

vegetables, beans, etc., in quantity.

The entire cost of the outfit was about $1,400. Two men were hired for

the season at $50 per month, and the party started from Miles City on

November 10, which was considered a very late start. The usual time of

setting out for the range was about October 1.

The outfit went by rail northeastward to Terry, and from thence across

country south and east about 100 miles, around the head of O'Fallon

Creek to the head of Beaver Creek, a tributary of the Little Missouri. A

good range was selected, without encroachment upon the domains of the

hunters already in the field, and the camp was made near the bank of the

creek, close to a supply of wood and water, and screened from distant

observation by a circle of hills and ridges. The two rectangular

wall-tents were set up end to end, with the cook-stove in the middle,

where the ends came together. In one tent the cooking and eating was

done, and the other contained the beds.

It was planned that the various members of the party should cook turn

about, a week at a time, but one of them soon developed such a rare and

conspicuous talent for bread-making and general cookery that he was

elected by acclamation to cook during the entire season. To the other

three members fell the hunting. Each man hunted separately from the

others, and skinned all the animals that his rifle brought down.

There were buffalo on the range when the hunters arrived, and the

killing began at once. At daylight the still-hunter sallied forth on

foot, carrying in his hand his huge Sharps rifle, weighing from 16 to 19

pounds, with from seventy-five to one hundred loaded cartridges in his

two belts or his pockets. At his side, depending from his belt, hung his

"hunter's companion," a flat leather scabbard, containing a ripping

knife, a skinning knife, and a butcher's steel upon which to sharpen

them. The total weight carried was very considerable, seldom less than

36 pounds, and often more.

Inasmuch as it was highly important to move camp as seldom as possible

in the course of a season's work, the hunter exercised the greatest

precaution in killing his game, and had ever before his mind the

necessity of doing his killing without frightening away the survivors.

With ten thousand buffaloes on their range, it was considered the height

of good luck to find a "bunch" of fifty head in a secluded "draw" or

hollow, where it was possible to "make a kill" without disturbing the

big herd.

The still-hunter usually went on foot, for when buffaloes became so

scarce as to make it necessary for him to ride his occupation was

practically gone. At the time I speak of, the hunter seldom had to walk

more than 3 miles from camp to find buffalo, in case there were any at

all on his range, and it was usually an advantage to be without a horse.

From the top of a ridge or high butte the country was carefully scanned,

and if several small herds were in sight the one easiest to approach was

selected as the one to attack. It was far better to find a herd lying

down or quietly grazing, or sheltering from a cold wind, than to find it

traveling, for while a hard run of a mile or two often enabled the

hunter to "head off" a moving herd and kill a certain number of animals

out of it, the net results were never half so satisfactory as with herds

absolutely at rest.

Having decided upon an attack, the hunter gets to leeward of his game,

and approaches it according to the nature of the ground. If it is in a

hollow, he secures a position at the top of the nearest ridge, as close

as he can get. If it is in a level "flat," he looks for a gully up which

he can skulk until within good rifle-shot. If there is no gully, he may

be obliged to crawl half a mile on his hands and knees, often through

snow or amongst beds of prickly pear, taking advantage of even such

scanty cover as sage-brush affords. Some Montana still-hunters adopted

the method of drawing a gunny-sack over the entire upper half of the

body, with holes cut for the eyes and arms, which simple but

unpicturesque arrangement often enabled the hunter to approach his

game much more easily and more closely than would otherwise have been

possible.

[Illustration: STILL-HUNTING BUFFALOES ON THE NORTHERN RANGE.

From a painting by J. H. Moser, in the National Museum.]

Having secured a position within from 100 to 250 yards of his game

(often the distance was much greater), the hunter secures a comfortable

rest for his huge rifle, all the time keeping his own person thoroughly

hidden from view, estimates the distance, carefully adjusts his sights,

and begins business. If the herd is moving, the animal in the lead is

the first one shot, close behind the fore leg and about a foot above the

brisket, which sends the ball through the lungs. If the herd is at rest,

the oldest cow is always supposed to be the leader, and she is the one

to kill first. The noise startles the buffaloes, they stare at the

little cloud of white smoke and feel inclined to run, but seeing their

leader hesitate they wait for her. She, when struck, gives a violent

start forward, but soon stops, and the blood begins to run from her

nostrils in two bright crimson streams. In a couple of minutes her body

sways unsteadily, she staggers, tries hard to keep her feet, but soon

gives a lurch sidewise and falls. Some of the other members of the herd

come around her and stare and sniff in wide-eyed wonder, and one of the

more wary starts to lead the herd away. But before she takes half a

dozen steps "bang!" goes the hidden rifle again, and her leadership is

ended forever. Her fall only increases the bewilderment of the survivors

over a proceeding which to them is strange and unaccountable, because

the danger is not visible. They cluster around the fallen ones, sniff at

the warm blood, bawl aloud in wonderment, and do everything but run

away.

The policy of the hunter is to not fire too rapidly, but to attend

closely to business, and every time a buffalo attempts to make off,

shoot it down. One shot per minute was a moderate rate of firing, but

under pressure of circumstances two per minute could be discharged with

deliberate precision. With the most accurate hunting rifle ever made, a

"dead rest," and a large mark practically motionless, it was no wonder

that nearly every shot meant a dead buffalo. The vital spot on a buffalo

which stands with its side to the hunter is about a foot in diameter,

and on a full-grown bull is considerably more. Under such conditions as

the above, which was called getting "a stand," the hunter nurses his

victims just as an angler plays a big fish with light tackle, and in the

most methodical manner murders them one by one, either until the last

one falls, his cartridges are all expended, or the stupid brutes come to

their senses and run away. Occasionally the poor fellow was troubled by

having his rifle get too hot to use, but if a snow-bank was at hand he

would thrust the weapon into it without ceremony to cool it off.

A success in getting a stand meant the slaughter of a good-sized herd. A

hunter whom I met in Montana, Mr. Harry Andrews, told me that he once

fired one hundred and fifteen shots from one spot and killed sixty-three

buffalo in less than an hour. The highest number Mr. McNaney ever knew

of being killed in one stand was ninety-one head, but Colonel Dodge

once counted one hundred and twelve carcasses of buffalo "inside of a

semicircle of 200 yards radius, all of which were killed by one man from

the same spot, and in less than three-quarters of an hour."

The "kill" being completed, the hunter then addressed himself to the

task of skinning his victims. The northern hunters were seldom guilty of

the reckless carelessness and lack of enterprise in the treatment of

robes which at one time was so prominent a feature of work on the

southern range. By the time white men began to hunt for robes on the

northern range, buffalo were becoming comparatively scarce, and robes

were worth from $2 to $4 each. The fur-buyers had taught the hunters,

with the potent argument of hard cash, that a robe carefully and neatly

taken off, stretched, and kept reasonably free from blood and dirt, was

worth more money in the market than one taken off in a slovenly manner,

and contrary to the nicer demands of the trade. After 1880, buffalo on

the northern range were skinned with considerable care, and amongst the

robe-hunters not one was allowed to become a loss when it was possible

to prevent it. Every full-sized cow robe was considered equal to $3.50

in hard cash, and treated accordingly. The hunter, or skinner, always

stretched every robe out on the ground to its fullest extent while it

was yet warm, and cut the initials of his employer in the thin

subcutaneous muscle which always adhered to the inside of the skin. A

warm skin is very elastic, and when stretched upon the ground the hair

holds it in shape until it either dries or freezes, and so retains its

full size. On the northern range skins were so valuable that many a

dispute arose between rival outfits over the ownership of a dead

buffalo, some of which produced serious results.

2. \_The chase on horseback or "running buffalo."\_--Next to the

still-hunt the method called "running buffalo" was the most fatal to the

race, and the one most universally practiced. To all hunters, save

greedy white men, the chase on horseback yielded spoil sufficient for

every need, and it also furnished sport of a superior kind--manly,

exhilarating, and well spiced with danger. Even the horses shared the

excitement and eagerness of their riders.

So long as the weapons of the Indian consisted only of the bow and arrow

and the spear, he was obliged to kill at close quarters or not at all.

And even when fire-arms were first placed in his hands their caliber was

so small, the charge so light, and the Indian himself so poor a marksman

at long range, that his best course was still to gallop alongside the

herd on his favorite "buffalo horse" and kill at the shortest possible

range. From all accounts, the Red River half-breeds, who hunted almost

exclusively with fire-arms, never dreamed of the deadly still hunt, but

always killed their game by "running" it.

In former times even the white men of the plains did the most of their

buffalo hunting on horseback, using the largest-sized Colt's revolver,

sometimes one in each hand, until the repeating-rifle made its

appearance, which in a great measure displaced the revolver in running

buffalo. But about that time began the mad warfare for "robes" and

"hides," and the only fair and sportsmanlike method of hunting was

declared too slow for the greedy buffalo-skinners.

Then came the cold-blooded butchery of the still-hunt. From that time on

the buffalo as a game animal steadily lost caste. It soon came to be

universally considered that there was no sport in hunting buffalo. True

enough of still-hunting, where the hunter sneaks up and shoots them down

one by one at such long range the report of his big rifle does not even

frighten them away. So far as sportsmanlike fairness is concerned, that

method was not one whit more elevated than killing game by poison.

Bat the chase on horseback was a different thing. Its successful

prosecution demanded a good horse, a bold rider, a firm seat, and

perfect familiarity with weapons. The excitement of it was intense, the

dangers not to be despised, and, above all, the buffalo had a fair show

for his life, or partially so, at least. The mode of attack is easily

described.

Whenever the hunters discovered a herd of buffalo, they usually got to

leeward of it and quietly rode forward in a body, or stretched out in a

regular skirmish line, behind the shelter of a knoll, perhaps, until

they had approached the herd as closely as could be done without

alarming it. Usually the unsuspecting animals, with a confidence due

more to their great numbers than anything else, would allow a party of

horsemen to approach within from 200 to 400 yards of their flankers, and

then they would start off on a slow trot. The hunters then put spurs to

their horses and dashed forward to overtake the herd as quickly as

possible. Once up with it, each hunter chooses the best animal within

his reach, chases him until his flying steed carries him close

alongside, and then the arrow or the bullet is sent into his vitals. The

fatal spot is from 12 to 18 inches in circumference, and lies

immediately back of the fore leg, with its lowest point on a line with

the elbow.

This, the true chase of the buffalo, was not only exciting, but

dangerous. It often happened that the hunter found himself surrounded by

the flying herd, and in a cloud of dust, so that neither man nor horse

could see the ground before them. Under such circumstances fatal

accidents to both men and horses were numerous. It was not an uncommon

thing for half-breeds to shoot each other in the excitement of the

chase; and, while now and then a wounded bull suddenly turned upon his

pursuer and overthrew him, the greatest number of casualties were from

falls.

Of the dangers involved in running buffalo Colonel Dodge writes as

follows:[52]

[Note 52: Plains of the Great West, p. 127.]

"The danger is not so much from the buffalo, which rarely makes an

effort to injure his pursuer, as from the fact that neither man nor

horse can see the ground, which may be rough and broken, or perforated

with prairie-dog or gopher holes. This danger is so imminent, that a man

who runs into a herd of buffalo may be said to take his life in his

hand. I have never known a man hurt by a buffalo in such a chase. I have

known of at least six killed, and a very great many more or less

injured, some very severely, by their horses falling with them."

On this point Catlin declares that to engage in running buffalo is "at

the hazard of every bone in one's body, to feel the fine and thrilling

exhilaration of the chase for a moment, and then as often to upbraid and

blame himself for his folly and imprudence."

Previous to my first experience in "running buffalo" I had entertained a

mortal dread of ever being called upon to ride a chase across a

prairie-dog town. The mouth of a prairie-dog's burrow is amply large to

receive the hoof of a horse, and the angle at which the hole descends

into the earth makes it just right for the leg of a running horse to

plunge into up to the knee and bring down both horse and rider

instantly; the former with a broken leg, to say the least of it. If the

rider sits loosely, and promptly resigns his seat, he will go flying

forward, as if thrown from a catapult, for 20 feet or so, perhaps to

escape with a few broken bones, and perhaps to have his neck broken, or

his skull fractured on the hard earth. If he sticks tightly to his

saddle, his horse is almost certain to fall upon him, and perhaps kill

him. Judge, then, my feelings when the first bunch of buffalo we started

headed straight across the largest prairie-dog town I had ever seen up

to that time. And not only was the ground honey-combed with gaping round

holes, but it was also crossed here and there by treacherous ditch-like

gullies, cut straight down into the earth to an uncertain depth, and so

narrow as to be invisible until it was almost time to leap across them.

But at such a time, with the game thundering along a few rods in

advance, the hunter thinks of little else except getting up to it. He

looks as far ahead as possible, and helps his horse to avoid dangers,

but to a great extent the horse must guide himself. The rider plies his

spurs and looks eagerly forward, almost feverish with excitement and

eagerness, but at the same time if he is wise he \_expects\_ a fall, and

holds himself in readiness to take the ground with as little damage as

he can.

Mr. Catlin gives a most graphic description of a hunting accident, which

may fairly be quoted in full as a type of many such. I must say that I

fully sympathize with M. Chardon in his estimate of the hardness of the

ground he fell upon, for I have a painful recollection of a fall I had

from which I arose with the settled conviction that the ground in

Montana is the hardest in the world! It seemed more like falling upon

cast-iron than prairie turf.

"I dashed along through the thundering mass as they swept away over the

plain, scarcely able to tell whether I was on a buffalo's back or my

horse, hit and hooked and jostled about, till at length I found myself

alongside my game, when I gave him a shot as I passed him.

[Illustration: THE CHASE ON HORSEBACK. From a painting in the National

Museum by George Catlin.]

I saw guns flash about me in several directions, but I heard them

not. Amidst the trampling throng Mons. Chardon had wounded a stately

bull, and at this moment was passing him with his piece leveled for

another shot. They were both at full speed and I also, within the

reach of the muzzle of my gun, when the bull instantly turned,

receiving the horse upon his horns, and the ground received poor

Chardon, who made a frog's leap of some 20 feet or more over the

bull's back and almost under my horse's heels. I wheeled my horse as

soon as possible and rode back where lay poor Chardon, gasping to

start his breath again, and within a few paces of him his huge

victim, with his heels high in the air, and the horse lying across

him. I dismounted instantly, but Chardon was raising himself on his

hands, with his eyes and mouth full of dirt, and feeling for his gun,

which lay about 30 feet in advance of him. 'Heaven spare you! are you

hurt, Chardon?' 'Hi-hic--hic--hic--hic--no;--hic--no--no, I believe

not. Oh, this is not much, Mons. Cataline--this is nothing new--but

this is a d--d hard piece of ground here--hic--oh! hic!' At this the

poor fellow fainted, but in a few moments arose, picked up his gun,

took his horse by the bit, which then opened \_its\_ eyes, and with a

\_hic\_ and a ugh--\_ughk!\_--sprang upon its feet, shook off the dirt,

and here we were, all upon our legs again, save the bull, whose fate

had been more sad than that of either."[53]

[Note 53: North American Indians, I, pp. 25-26.]

The following passage from Mr. Alexander Ross's graphic description of a

great hunt,[54] in which about four hundred hunters made an onslaught

upon a herd, affords a good illustration of the dangers in running

buffalo:

[Note 54: Red River Settlement, p. 256.]

"On this occasion the surface was rocky and full of badger-holes.

Twenty-three horses and riders were at one moment all sprawling on the

ground; one horse, gored by a bull, was killed on the spot; two more

were disabled by the fall; one rider broke his shoulder-blade; another

burst his gun and lost three of his fingers by the accident; and a third

was struck on the knee by an exhausted ball. These accidents will not be

thought overnumerous, considering the result, for in the evening no less

than thirteen hundred and seventy-five tongues were brought into camp."

It really seems as if the horses of the plains entered willfully and

knowingly into the war on the doomed herds. But for the willingness and

even genuine eagerness with which the "buffalo horses" of both white men

and Indians entered into the chase, hunting on horseback would have been

attended with almost insurmountable difficulties, and the results would

have been much less fatal to the species. According to all accounts the

horses of the Indians and half-breeds were far better trained than those

of their white rivals, no doubt owing to the fact that the use of the

bow, which required the free use of both hands, was only possible when

the horse took the right coarse of his own free will or else could be

guided by the pressure of the knees. If we may believe the historians of

that period, and there is not the slightest reason to doubt them, the

"buffalo horses" of the Indians displayed almost as much intelligence

and eagerness in the chase as did their human riders. Indeed, in

"running buffalo" with only the bow and arrow, nothing but the willing

co-operation of the horse could have possibly made this mode of hunting

either satisfactory or successful.

In Lewis and Clarke's Travels, volume II, page 387, appears the

following record:

"He [Sergeant Pryor] had found it almost impossible with two men to

drive on the remaining horses, for as soon as they discovered a herd of

buffaloes the loose horses immediately set off in pursuit of them, and

surrounded the buffalo herd with almost as much skill as their riders

could have done. At last he was obliged to send one horseman forward and

drive all the buffaloes from the route."

The Hon. H. H. Sibley, who once accompanied the Red River half-breeds on

their annual hunt, relates the following[55]:

"One of the hunters fell from his saddle, and was unable to overtake his

horse, which continued the chase as if he of himself could accomplish

great things, so much do these animals become imbued with a passion for

this sport! On another occasion a half-breed left his favorite steed at

the camp, to enable him to recruit his strength, enjoining upon his wife

the necessity of properly securing the animal, which was not done. Not

relishing the idea of being left behind, he started after us and soon

was alongside, and thus he continued to keep pace with the hunters in

their pursuit of the buffalo, seeming to await with impatience the fall

of some of them to the earth. The chase ended, he came neighing to his

master, whom he soon singled out, although the men were dispersed here

and there for a distance of miles."

[Note 55: Schoolcraft's "North American Indians," 108.]

Col. R. I. Dodge, in his Plains of the Great West, page 129, describes a

meeting with two Mexican buffalo-hunters whose horses were so fleet and

so well trained that whenever a herd of buffalo came in sight, instead

of shooting their game wherever they came up with it, the one having the

best horse would dash into the herd, cut out a fat two-year old, and,

with the help of his partner, then actually drive it to their camp

before shooting it down. "They had a fine lot of meat and a goodly pile

of skins, and they said that every buffalo had been driven into camp and

killed as the one I saw. 'It saves a heap of trouble packing the meat to

camp,' said one of them, naively."

Probably never before in the history of the world, until civilized man

came in contact with the buffalo, did whole armies of men march out in

true military style, with officers, flags, chaplains, and rules of war,

and make war on wild animals. No wonder the buffalo has been

exterminated. So long as they existed north of the Missouri in any

considerable number, the half-breeds and Indians of the Manitoba Red

River settlement used to gather each year in a great army, and go with

carts to the buffalo range. On these great hunts, which took place every

year from about the 15th of June to the 1st of September, vast numbers

of buffalo were killed, and the supply was finally exhausted. As if

Heaven had decreed the extirpation of the species, the half-breed

hunters, like their white robe-hunting rivals farther south, always

killed \_cows\_ in preference to bulls so long as a choice was possible,

the very course best calculated to exterminate any species in the

shortest possible time.

The army of half-breeds and Indians which annually went forth from the

Red River settlement to make war on the buffalo was often far larger

than the army with which Cortez subdued a great empire. As early as 1846

it had become so great, that it was necessary to divide it into two

divisions, one of which, the White Horse Plain division, was accustomed

to go west by the Assinniboine River to the "rapids crossing-place," and

from there in a southwesterly direction. The Red River division went

south to Pembina, and did the most of their hunting in Dakota. The two

divisions sometimes met (says Professor Hind), but not intentionally. In

1849 a Mr. Flett took a census of the White Horse Plain division, in

Dakota Territory, and found that it contained 603 carts, 700

half-breeds, 200 Indians, 600 horses, 200 oxen, 400 dogs, and 1 cat.

In his "Red River Settlement" Mr. Alexander Ross gives the following

census of the number of carts assembled in camp for the buffalo hunt at

five different-periods:

+--------------------------+

|\_Number of carts assembled|

| for the first trip.\_ |

+--------------------------+

|In 1820 | 540|

|In 1825 | 680|

|In 1830 | 820|

|In 1835 | 970|

|In 1840 | 1,210|

+--------------------------+

The expedition which was accompanied by Rev. Mr. Belcourt, a Catholic

priest, whose account is set forth in the Hon. Mr. Sibley's paper on the

buffalo,[56] was a comparatively small one, which started from Pembina,

and very generously took pains not to spoil the prospects of the great

Red River division, which was expected to take the field at the same

time. This, therefore, was a small party, like others which had already

reached the range; but it contained 213 carts, 55 hunters and their

families, making 60 lodges in all. This party killed 1,776 cows (bulls

not counted, many of which were killed, though "not even a tongue was

taken"), which yielded 228 bags of pemmican, 1,213 bales of dried meat,

166 sacks of tallow, and 556 bladders full of marrow. But this was very

moderate slaughter, being about 33 buffalo to each family. Even as late

as 1872, when buffalo were getting scarce, Mr. Grant[57] met a

half-breed family on the Qu'Appelle, consisting of man, wife, and seven

children, whose six carts were laden with the meat and robes yielded by

\_sixty\_ buffaloes; that number representing this one hunter's share of

the spoils of the hunt.

[Note 56: Schoolcraft, pp. 101-110.]

[Note 57: Ocean to Ocean, p. 116.]

To afford an idea of the truly military character of those Red River

expeditions, I have only to quote a page from Prof. Henry Youle

Hind:[58]

[Note 58: Assinniboine and Saskatch. Exp. Exped., II, p. 111.]

"After the start from the settlement has been well made, and all

stragglers or tardy hunters have arrived, a great council is held and a

president elected. A number of captains are nominated by the president

and people jointly. The captains then proceed to appoint their own

policemen, the number assigned to each not exceeding ten. Their duties

are to see that the laws of the hunt are strictly carried out. In 1840,

if a man ran a buffalo without permission before the general hunt began,

his saddle and bridle were cut to pieces for the first offense; for the

second offense his clothes were cut off his back. At the present day

these punishments are changed to a fine of 20 shillings for the first

offense. No gun is permitted to be fired when in the buffalo country

before the 'race' begins. A priest sometimes goes with the hunt, and

mass is then celebrated in the open prairies.

"At night the carts are placed in the form of a circle, with the horses

and cattle inside the ring, and it is the duty of the captains and their

policemen to see that this is rightly done. All laws are proclaimed in

camp, and relate to the hunt alone. All camping orders are given by

signal, a flag being carried by the guides, who are appointed by

election. Each guide has his tarn of one day, and no man can pass a

guide on duty without subjecting himself to a fine of 5 shillings. No

hunter can leave the camp to return home without permission, and no one

is permitted to stir until any animal or property of value supposed to

be lost is recovered. The policemen, at the order of their captains, can

seize any cart at night-fall and place it where they choose for the

public safety, but on the following morning they are compelled to bring

it back to the spot from which they moved it the previous evening. This

power is very necessary, in order that the horses may not be stampeded

by night attacks of the Sioux or other Indian tribes at war with the

half-breeds. A heavy fine is imposed in case of neglect in extinguishing

fires when the camp is broken up in the morning.

"In sight of buffalo all the hunters are drawn up in line, the

president, captains, and police being a few yards in advance,

restraining the impatient hunters. 'Not yet! Not yet!' is the subdued

whisper of the president. The approach to the herd is cautiously made.

'Now!' the president exclaims; and as the word leaves his lips the

charge is made, and in a few minutes the excited half-breeds are amongst

the bewildered buffalo."

"After witnessing one buffalo hunt," says Prof. John Macoun, "I can not

blame the half-breed and the Indian for leaving the farm and wildly

making for the plains when it is reported that buffalo have crossed the

border."

The "great fall hunt" was a regular event with about all the Indian

tribes living within striking distance of the buffalo, in the course of

which great numbers of buffalo were killed, great quantities of meat

dried and made into pemmican, and all the skins taken were tanned in

various ways to suit the many purposes they were called upon to serve.

Mr. Francis La Flesche informs me that during the presence of the

buffalo in western Nebraska and until they were driven south by the

Sioux, the fall hunt of the Omahas was sometimes participated in by

three hundred lodges, or about 3,000 people all told, six hundred of

whom were warriors, and each of whom generally killed about ten

buffaloes. The laws of the hunt were very strict and inexorable. In

order that all participants should have an equal chance, it was decreed

that any hunter caught "still-hunting" should be soundly flogged. On one

occasion an Indian was discovered in the act, but not caught. During the

chase which was made to capture him many arrows were fired at him by the

police, but being better mounted than his pursuers he escaped, and kept

clear of the camp during the remainder of the hunt. On another occasion

an Omaha, guilty of the same offense, was chased, and in his effort to

escape his horse fell with him in a coulée and broke one of his legs. In

spite of the sad plight of the Omaha, his pursuers came up and flogged

him, just as if nothing had happened.

After the invention of the Colt's revolver, and breech-loading rifles

generally, the chase on horseback speedily became more fatal to the

bison than it ever had been before. With such weapons, it was possible

to gallop into the midst of a flying herd and, during the course of a

run of 2 or 3 miles, discharge from twelve to forty shots at a range of

only a few yards, or even a few feet. In this kind of hunting the heavy

Navy revolver was the favorite weapon, because it could be held in one

hand and fired with far greater precision than could a rifle held in

both hands. Except in the hands of an expert, the use of the rifle was

limited, and often attended with risk to the hunter; but the revolver

was good for all directions; it could very often be used with deadly

effect where a rifle could not have been used at all, and, moreover, it

left the bridle-hand free. Many cavalrymen and hunters were able to use

a revolver with either hand, or one in each hand. Gen. Lew. Wallace

preferred the Smith and Wesson in 1867, which he declared to be "the

best of revolvers" then.

It was his marvelous skill in shooting buffaloes with a rifle, from the

back of a galloping horse, that earned for the Hon. W. F. Cody the

sobriquet by which he is now familiarly known to the world--"Buffalo

Bill." To the average hunter on horseback the galloping of the horse

makes it easy for him to aim at the heart of a buffalo and shoot clear

over its back. No other shooting is so difficult, or requires such

consummate dexterity as shooting with any kind of a gun, especially a

rifle, from the back of a running horse. Let him who doubts this

statement try it for himself and he will doubt no more. It was in the

chase of the buffalo on horseback, armed with a rifle, that "Buffalo

Bill" acquired the marvelous dexterity with the rifle which he has since

exhibited in the presence of the people of two continents. I regret that

circumstances have prevented my obtaining the exact figures of the great

kill of buffaloes that Mr. Cody once made in a single run, in which he

broke all previous records in that line, and fairly earned his title. In

1867 he entered into a contract with the Kansas Pacific Railway, then in

course of construction through western Kansas, at a monthly salary of

$500, to deliver all the buffalo meat that would be required by the army

of laborers engaged in building the road. In eighteen mouths he killed

4,280 buffaloes.

3. \_Impounding or Killing in Pens.\_--At first thought it seems hard to

believe that it was ever possible for Indians to build pens and drive

wild buffaloes into them, as cowboys now corral their cattle, yet such

wholesale catches were of common occurrence among the Plains Crees of

the south Saskatchewan country, and the same general plan was pursued,

with slight modifications, by the Indians of the Assinniboine,

Blackfeet, and Gros Ventres, and other tribes of the Northwest. Like the

keddah elephant-catching operations in India, this plan was feasible

only in a partially wooded country, and where buffalo were so numerous

that their presence could be counted upon to a certainty. The "pound"

was simply a circular pen, having a single entrance; but being unable to

construct a gate of heavy timbers, such as is made to drop and close the

entrance to an elephant pen, the Indians very shrewdly got over the

difficulty by making the opening at the edge of a perpendicular bank 10

or 12 feet high, easy enough for a buffalo to jump down, but impossible

for him to scale afterward. It is hardly probable that Indians who were

expert enough to attack and kill buffalo on foot would have been tempted

to undertake the labor that building a pound always involved, had it not

been for the wild excitement attending captures made in this way, and

which were shared to the fullest possible extent by warriors, women, and

children alike.

The best description of this method which has come under our notice is

that of Professor Hind, who witnessed its practice by the Plains Crees,

on the headwaters of the Qu'Appelle River, in 1858. He describes the

pound he saw as a fence, constructed of the trunks of trees laced

together with green withes, and braced on the outside by props,

inclosing a circular space about 120 feet in diameter. It was placed in

a pretty dell between sand-hills, and leading from it in two diverging

rows (like the guiding wings of an elephant pen) were the two rows of

bushes which the Indians designate "dead men," which serve to guide the

buffalo into the pound. The "dead men" extended a distance of 4 miles

into the prairie. They were placed about 50 feet apart, and the two

rows gradually diverged until at their extremities they were from 11/2

to 2 miles apart.

[Illustration: CREE INDIANS IMPOUNDING BUFFALOES. Reproduced from Prof.

H. Y. Hind's--"Red River, Assinniboine and Saskatchewan Expedition."]

"When the skilled hunters are about to bring in a herd of buffalo from

the prairie," says Professor Hind, "they direct the course of the gallop

of the alarmed animals by confederates stationed in hollows or small

depressions, who, when the buffalo appear inclined to take a direction

leading from the space marked out by the 'dead men,' show themselves for

a moment and wave their robes, immediately hiding again. This serves to

turn the buffalo slightly in another direction, and when the animals,

having arrived between the rows of 'dead men,' endeavor to pass through

them, Indians stationed here and there behind a 'dead man' go through

the same operation, and thus keep the animals within the narrowing

limits of the converging lines. At the entrance to the pound there is a

strong trunk of a tree placed about a foot from the ground, and on the

inner side an excavation is made sufficiently deep to prevent the

buffalo from leaping back when once in the pound. As soon as the animals

have taken the fatal spring, they begin to gallop round and round the

ring fence, looking for a chance to escape, but with the utmost silence

women and children on the outside hold their robes before every orifice

until the whole herd is brought in; then they climb to the top of the

fence, and, with the hunters who have followed closely in the rear of

the buffalo, spear or shoot with bows and arrows or fire-arms at the

bewildered animals, rapidly becoming frantic with rage and terror,

within the narrow limits of the pound.

"A dreadful scene of confusion and slaughter then begins; the oldest and

strongest animals crush and toss the weaker; the shouts and screams of

the excited Indians rise above the roaring of the bulls, the bellowing

of the cows, and the piteous moaning of the calves. The dying struggles

of so many huge and powerful animals crowded together create a revolting

and terrible scene, dreadful from the excess of its cruelty and waste of

life, but with occasional displays of wonderful brute strength and rage;

while man in his savage, untutored, and heathen state shows both in deed

and expression how little he is superior to the noble beasts he so

wantonly and cruelly destroys."[59]

[Note 59: Assinniboine and Saskatchewan Expedition, p. 358.]

The last scene of the bloody tragedy is thus set forth a week later:

"Within the circular fence ... lay, tossed in every conceivable

position, over two hundred dead buffalo. [The exact number was 240.]

From old bulls to calves of three months' old, animals of every age were

huddled together in all the forced attitudes of violent death. Some lay

on their backs, with eyes starting from their heads and tongue thrust

out through clotted gore. Others were impaled on the horns of the old

and strong bulls. Others again, which had been tossed, were lying with

broken backs, two and three deep. One little calf hung suspended on the

horns of a bull which had impaled it in the wild race round and round

the pound. The Indians looked upon the dreadful and sickening sight

with evident delight, and told how such and such a bull or cow had

exhibited feats of wonderful strength in the death-struggle. The flesh

of many of the cows had been taken from them, and was drying in the sun

on stages near the tents. It is needless to say that the odor was

overpowering, and millions of large blue flesh-flies, humming and

buzzing over the putrefying bodies, was not the least disgusting part of

the spectacle."

It is some satisfaction to know that when the first "run" was made, ten

days previous, the herd of two hundred buffaloes was no sooner driven

into the pound than a wary old bull espied a weak spot in the fence,

charged it at full speed, and burst through to freedom and the prairie,

followed by the entire herd.

Strange as it may seem to-day, this wholesale method of destroying

buffalo was once practiced in Montana. In his memoir on "The American

Bison," Mr. J. A. Allen states that as late as 1873, while journeying

through that Territory in charge of the Yellowstone Expedition, he

"several times met with the remains of these pounds and their converging

fences in the region above the mouth of the Big Horn River." Mr. Thomas

Simpson states that in 1840 there were three camps of Assinniboine

Indians in the vicinity of Carlton House, each of which had its buffalo

pound into which they drove forty or fifty animals daily.

4. \_The "Surround."\_--During the last forty years the final

extermination of the buffalo has been confidently predicted by not only

the observing white man of the West, but also nearly all the Indians and

half-breeds who formerly depended upon this animal for the most of the

necessities, as well as luxuries, of life. They have seen the great

herds driven westward farther and farther, until the plains were left

tenantless, and hunger took the place of feasting on the choice tid-bits

of the chase. And is it not singular that during this period the Indian

tribes were not moved by a common impulse to kill sparingly, and by the

exercise of a reasonable economy in the chase to make the buffalo last

as long as possible.

But apparently no such thoughts ever entered their minds, so far as

\_they themselves\_ were concerned. They looked with jealous eyes upon the

white hunter, and considered him as much of a robber as if they had a

brand on every buffalo. It has been claimed by some authors that the

Indians killed with more judgment and more care for the future than did

the white man, but I fail to find any evidence that such was ever the

fact. They all killed wastefully, wantonly, and always about five times

as many head as were really necessary for food. It was always the same

old story, whenever a gang of Indians needed meat a whole herd was

slaughtered, the choicest portions of the finest animals were taken, and

about 75 per cent of the whole left to putrefy and fatten the wolves.

And now, as we read of the appalling slaughter, one can scarcely repress

the feeling of grim satisfaction that arises when we also read that many

of the ex-slaughterers are almost starving for the millions of pounds

of fat and juicy buffalo meat they wasted a few years ago. Verily, the

buffalo is in a great measure avenged already.

The following extract from Mr. Catlin's "North American Indians,"[60] I,

page 199-200, serves well to illustrate not only a very common and very

deadly Indian method of wholesale slaughter--the "surround"--but also

to show the senseless destructiveness of Indians even when in a state of

semi-starvation, which was brought upon them by similar acts of

improvidence and wastefulness.

[Note 60: H. Mis. 600, pt. 2-31]

"The Minatarees, as well as the Mandans, had suffered for some months

past for want of meat, and had indulged in the most alarming fears that

the herds of buffalo were emigrating so far off from them that there was

great danger of their actual starvation, when it was suddenly announced

through the village one morning at an early hour that a herd of

buffaloes was in sight. A hundred or more young men mounted their

horses, with weapons in hand, and steered their course to the prairies.

\* \* \*

"The plan of attack, which in this country is familiarly called a

surround, was explicitly agreed upon, and the hunters, who were all

mounted on their 'buffalo horses' and armed with bows and arrows or long

lances, divided into two columns, taking opposite directions, and drew

themselves gradually around the herd at a mile or more distance from

them, thus forming a circle of horsemen at equal distances apart, who

gradually closed in upon them with a moderate pace at a signal given.

The unsuspecting herd at length 'got the wind' of the approaching enemy

and fled in a mass in the greatest confusion. To the point where they

were aiming to cross the line the horsemen were seen, at full speed,

gathering and forming in a column, brandishing their weapons, and

yelling in the most frightful manner, by which they turned the black and

rushing mass, which moved off in an opposite direction, where they were

again met and foiled in a similar manner, and wheeled back in utter

confusion; by which time the horsemen had closed in from all directions,

forming a continuous line around them, whilst the poor affrighted

animals were eddying about in a crowded and confused mass, hooking and

climbing upon each other, when the work of death commenced. I had rode

up in the rear and occupied an elevated position at a few rods'

distance, from which I could (like the general of a battlefield) survey

from my horse's back the nature and the progress of the grand \_mêlée\_,

but (unlike him) without the power of issuing a command or in any way

directing its issue.

"In this grand turmoil [see illustration] a cloud of dust was soon

raised, which in parts obscured the throng where the hunters were

galloping their horses around and driving the whizzing arrows or their

long lances to the hearts of these noble animals; which in many

instances, becoming infuriated with deadly wounds in their sides,

erected their shaggy manes over their bloodshot eyes and furiously

plunged forward at the sides of their assailants' horses, sometimes

goring them to death at a lunge and putting their dismounted riders to

flight for their lives. Sometimes their dense crowd was opened, and the

blinded horsemen, too intent on their prey amidst the cloud of dust,

were hemmed and wedged in amidst the crowding beasts, over whose backs

they were obliged to leap for security, leaving their horses to the fate

that might await them in the results of this wild and desperate war.

Many were the bulls that turned upon their assailants and met them with

desperate resistance, and many were the warriors who were dismounted and

saved themselves by the superior muscles of their legs; some who were

closely pursued by the bulls wheeled suddenly around, and snatching the

part of a buffalo robe from around their waists, threw it over the horns

and eyes of the infuriated beast, and darting by its side drove the

arrow or the lance to its heart; others suddenly dashed off upon the

prairie by the side of the affrighted animals which had escaped from the

throng, and closely escorting them for a few rods, brought down their

heart's blood in streams and their huge carcasses upon the green and

enameled turf.

"In this way this grand hunt soon resolved itself into a desperate

battle, \_and in the space of fifteen minutes resulted in the total

destruction of the whole herd\_, which in all their strength and fury

were doomed, like every beast and living thing else, to fall before the

destroying hands of mighty man.

"I had sat in trembling silence upon my horse and witnessed this

extraordinary scene, which allowed not one of these animals to escape

out of my sight. Many plunged off upon the prairie for a distance, but

were overtaken and killed, and although I could not distinctly estimate

the number that were slain, yet I am sure that some hundreds of these

noble animals fell in this grand \_mêlée\_. \* \* \* Amongst the poor

affrighted creatures that had occasionally dashed through the ranks of

their enemy and sought safety in flight upon the prairie (and in some

instances had undoubtedly gained it), I saw them stand awhile, looking

back, when they turned, and, as if bent on their own destruction,

retraced their steps, and mingled themselves and their deaths with those

of the dying throng. Others had fled to a distance on the prairies, and

for want of company, of friends or of foes, had stood and gazed on till

the battle-scene was over, seemingly taking pains to stay and hold their

lives in readiness for their destroyers until the general destruction

was over, when they fell easy victims to their weapons, making the

slaughter complete."

It is to be noticed that \_every animal\_ of this entire herd of several

hundred was slain on the spot, and there is no room to doubt that at

least half (possibly much more) of the meat thus taken was allowed to

become a loss. People who are so utterly senseless as to wantonly

destroy their own source of food, as the Indians have done, certainly

deserve to starve.

This "surround" method of wholesale slaughter was also practiced by

the Cheyennes, Arapahoes, Sioux, Pawnees, Ornabas, and probably many

other tribes.

[Illustration: THE SURROUND. From a painting in the National Museum by

George Catlin.]

5. \_Decoying and Driving.\_--Another method of slaughtering by wholesale

is thus described by Lewis and Clarke, I, 235. The locality indicated

was the Missouri River, in Montana, just above the mouth of Judith

River:

"On the north we passed a precipice about 120 feet high, under which lay

scattered the fragments of at least one hundred carcasses of buffaloes,

although the water which had washed away the lower part of the hill,

must have carried off many of the dead. These buffaloes had been chased

down a precipice in a way very common on the Missouri, and by which vast

herds are destroyed in a moment. The mode of hunting is to select one of

the most active and fleet young men, who is disguised by a buffalo skin

round his body; the skin of the head with the ears and horns fastened on

his own head in such a way as to deceive the buffaloes. Thus dressed, he

fixes himself at a convenient distance between a herd of buffaloes and

any of the river precipices, which sometimes extend for some miles.

"His companions in the mean time get in the rear and side of the herd,

and at a given signal show themselves, and advance towards the

buffaloes. They instantly take alarm, and, finding the hunters beside

them, they run toward the disguised Indian or decoy, who leads them on

at full speed toward the river, when, suddenly securing himself in some

crevice of the cliff which he had previously fixed on, the herd is left

on the brink of the precipice; it is then in vain for the foremost to

retreat or even to stop; they are pressed on by the hindmost rank, who,

seeing no danger but from the hunters, goad on those before them till

the whole are precipitated and the shore is strewed with their dead

bodies. Sometimes in this perilous seduction the Indian is himself

either trodden under foot by the rapid movements of the buffaloes, or,

missing his footing in the cliff, is urged down the precipice by the

falling herd. The Indians then select as much meat as they wish, and the

rest is abandoned to the wolves, and creates a most dreadful stench."

Harper's Magazine, volume 38, page 147, contains the following from the

pen of Theo. E. Davis, in an article entitled "The Buffalo Range:"

"As I have previously stated, the best hunting on the range is to be

found between the Platte and Arkansas Rivers. Here I have seen the

Indians have recourse to another method of slaughtering buffalo in a

very easy, but to me a cruel way, for where one buffalo is killed

several are sure to be painfully injured; but these, too, are soon

killed by the Indians, who make haste to lance or shoot the cripples.

"The mode of hunting is somewhat as follows: A herd is discovered

grazing on the table-lands. Being thoroughly acquainted with the

country, the Indians are aware of the location of the nearest point

where the table land is broken abruptly by a precipice which descends a

hundred or more feet. Toward this 'devil-jump' the Indians head the

herd, which is at once driven pell mell to and over the precipice.

Meanwhile a number of Indians have taken their way by means of routes

known to them, and succeed in reaching the cañon through which the

crippled buffalo are running in all directions. These are quickly

killed, so that out of a very considerable band of buffalo but few

escape, many having been killed by the fall and others dispatched while

limping off. This mode of hunting is sometimes indulged in by

harum-scarum white men, but it is done more for deviltry than anything

else. I have never known of its practice by army officers or persons who

professed to hunt buffalo as a sport."

6. \_Hunting on Snow-shoes.\_--"In the dead of the winters," says Mr.

Catlin,[61] "which are very long and severely cold in this country,

where horses can not be brought into the chase with any avail, the

Indian runs upon the surface of the snow by aid of his snow-shoes, which

buoy him up, while the great weight of the buffaloes sinks them down to

the middle of their sides, and, completely stopping their progress,

insures them certain and easy victims to the bow or lance of their

pursuers. The snow in these regions often lies during the winter to the

depth of 3 and 4 feet, being blown away from the tops and sides of the

hills in many places, which are left bare for the buffaloes to graze

upon, whilst it is drifted in the hollows and ravines to a very great

depth, and rendered almost entirely impassable to these huge animals,

which, when closely pursued by their enemies, endeavor to plunge through

it, but are soon wedged in and almost unable to move, where they fall an

easy prey to the Indian, who runs up lightly upon his snow-shoes and

drives his lance to their hearts. The skins are then stripped off, to be

sold to the fur traders, and the carcasses left to be devoured by the

wolves. [Owing to the fact that the winter's supply of meat was procured

and dried in the summer and fall months, the flesh of all buffalo killed

in winter was allowed to become a total loss.] This is the season in

which the greatest number of these animals are destroyed for their

robes; they are most easily killed at this time, and their hair or fur,

being longer and more abundant, gives greater value to the robe."

[Note 61: North American Indians, I, 253.]

\* \* \* \* \*

III. PROGRESS OF THE EXTERMINATION.

A. THE PERIOD OF DESULTORY DESTRUCTION, FROM 1730 TO 1830.

[Illustration: INDIANS ON SNOW-SHOES HUNTING BUFFALOES.

From a painting in the National Museum by George Catlin.]

The disappearance of the buffalo from all the country east of the

Mississippi was one of the inevitable results of the advance of

civilization. To the early pioneers who went forth into the wilderness

to wrestle with nature for the necessities of life, this valuable animal

might well have seemed a gift direct from the hand of Providence. During

the first few years of the early settler's life in a new country, the

few domestic animals he had brought with him were far too valuable to

be killed for food, and for a long period he looked to the wild animals

of the forest and the prairie for his daily supply of meat. The time was

when no one stopped to think of the important part our game animals

played in the settlement of this country, and even now no one has

attempted to calculate the lessened degree of rapidity with which the

star of empire would have taken its westward way without the bison,

deer, elk, and antelope. The Western States and Territories pay little

heed to the wanton slaughter of deer and elk now going on in their

forests, but the time will soon come when the "grangers" will enter

those regions and find the absence of game a very serious matter.

Although the bison was the first wild species to disappear before the

advance of civilization, he served a good purpose at a highly critical

period. His huge bulk of toothsome flesh fed many a hungry family, and

his ample robe did good service in the settler's cabin and sleigh in

winter weather. By the time game animals had become scarce, domestic

herds and flocks had taken their place, and hunting became a pastime

instead of a necessity.

As might be expected, from the time the bison was first seen by white

men he has always been a conspicuous prize, and being the largest of the

land quadrupeds, was naturally the first to disappear. Every man's hand

has been against him. While his disappearance from the eastern United

States was, in the main, due to the settler who killed game as a means

of subsistence, there were a few who made the killing of those animals a

regular business. This occurred almost exclusively in the immediate

vicinity of salt springs, around which the bison congregated in great

numbers, and made their wholesale slaughter of easy accomplishment. Mr.

Thomas Ashe[62] has recorded some very interesting facts and

observations on this point. In speaking of an old man who in the latter

part of the last century built a log house for himself "on the immediate

borders of a salt spring," in western Pennsylvania, for the purpose of

killing buffaloes out of the immense droves which frequented that spot,

Mr. Ashe says:

[Note 62: Travels in America in 1806. London, 1808.]

"In the first and second years this old man, with some companions,

killed from six to seven hundred of these noble creatures merely for the

sake of their skins, which to them were worth only 2 shillings each; and

after this 'work of death' they were obliged to leave the place till the

following season, or till the wolves, bears, panthers, eagles, rooks,

ravens, etc., had devoured the carcasses and abandoned the place for

other prey. In the two following years the same persons killed great

numbers out of the first droves that arrived, skinned them, and left

their bodies exposed to the sun and air; but they soon had reason to

repent of this, for the remaining droves, as they came up in succession,

stopped, gazed on the mangled and putrid bodies, sorrowfully moaned or

furiously lowed aloud, and returned instantly to the wilderness in an

unusual run, without tasting their favorite spring or licking the

impregnated earth, which was also once their most agreeable occupation;

nor did they nor any of their race ever revisit the neighborhood.

"The simple history of this spring is that of every other in the settled

parts of this Western World; the carnage of beasts was everywhere the

same. I met with a man who had killed two thousand buffaloes with his

own hand, and others no doubt have done the same thing. In consequence

of such proceedings not one buffalo is at this time to be found east of

the Mississippi, except a few domesticated by the curious, or carried

through the country on a public show."

But, fortunately, there is no evidence that such slaughter as that

described by Mr. Ashe was at all common, and there is reason for the

belief that until within the last forty years the buffalo was sacrificed

in ways conducive to the greatest good of the greatest number.

From Coronado to General Frémont there has hardly been an explorer of

United States territory who has not had occasion to bless the bison, and

its great value to mankind can hardly be overestimated, although by many

it can readily be forgotten.

The disappearance of the bison from the eastern United States was due to

its consumption as food. It was very gradual, like the march of

civilization, and, under the circumstances, absolutely inevitable. In a

country so thickly peopled as this region speedily became, the mastodon

could have survived extinction about as easily as the bison. Except when

the latter became the victim of wholesale slaughter, there was little

reason to bemoan his fate, save upon grounds that may be regarded purely

sentimental. He served a most excellent purpose in the development of

the country. Even as late as 1875 the farmers of eastern Kansas were in

the habit of making trips every fall into the western part of that State

for wagon loads of buffalo meat as a supply for the succeeding winter.

The farmers of Texas, Nebraska, Dakota, and Minnesota also drew largely

upon the buffalo as long as the supply lasted.

The extirpation of the bison west of the Rocky Mountains was due to

legitimate hunting for food and clothing rather than for marketable

peltries. In no part of that whole region was the species ever numerous,

although in the mountains themselves, notably in Colorado, within easy

reach of the great prairies on the east, vast numbers were seen by the

early explorers and pioneers. But to the westward, away from the

mountains, they were very rarely met with, and their total destruction

in that region was a matter of easy accomplishment. According to Prof.

J. A. Allen the complete disappearance of the bison west of the Rocky

Mountains took place between 1838 and 1840.

B. THE PERIOD OF SYSTEMATIC SLAUGHTER, FROM 1830 TO 1838.

We come now to a history which I would gladly leave unwritten. Its

record is a disgrace to the American people in general, and the

Territorial, State, and General Government in particular. It will cause

succeeding generations to regard us as being possessed of the leading

characteristics of the savage and the beast of prey--cruelty and greed.

We will be likened to the blood-thirsty tiger of the Indian jungle, who

slaughters a dozen bullocks at once when he knows he can eat only one.

In one respect, at least, the white men who engaged in the systematic

slaughter of the bison were savages just as much as the Piegan Indians,

who would drive a whole herd over a precipice to secure a week's rations

of meat for a single village. The men who killed buffaloes for their

tongues and those who shot them from the railway trains for sport were

murderers. In no way does civilized man so quickly revert to his former

state as when he is alone with the beasts of the field. Give him a gun

and something which he may kill without getting himself in trouble, and,

presto! he is instantly a savage again, finding exquisite delight in

bloodshed, slaughter, and death, if not for gain, then solely for the

joy and happiness of it. There is no kind of warfare against game

animals too unfair, too disreputable, or too mean for white men to

engage in if they can only do so with safety to their own precious

carcasses. They will shoot buffalo and antelope from running railway

trains, drive deer into water with hounds and cut their throats in cold

blood, kill does with fawns a week old, kill fawns by the score for

their spotted skins, slaughter deer, moose, and caribou in the snow at a

pitiful disadvantage, just as the wolves do; exterminate the wild ducks

on the whole Atlantic seaboard with punt guns for the metropolitan

markets; kill off the Rocky Mountain goats for hides worth only 50 cents

apiece, destroy wagon loads of trout with dynamite, and so on to the end

of the chapter.

Perhaps the most gigantic task ever undertaken on this continent in the

line of game-slaughter was the extermination of the bison in the great

pasture region by the hide-hunters. Probably the brilliant rapidity and

success with which that lofty undertaking was accomplished was a matter

of surprise even to those who participated in it. The story of the

slaughter is by no means a long one.

The period of systematic slaughter of the bison naturally begins with

the first organized efforts in that direction, in a business-like,

wholesale way. Although the species had been steadily driven westward

for a hundred years by the advancing settlements, and had during all

that time been hunted for the meat and robes it yielded, its

extermination did not begin in earnest until 1820, or thereabouts. As

before stated, various persons had previous to that time made buffalo

killing a business in order to sell their skins, but such instances were

very exceptional. By that time the bison was totally extinct in all the

region lying east of the Mississippi River except a portion of

Wisconsin, where it survived until about 1830. In 1820 the first

organized buffalo hunting expedition on a grand scale was made from the

Red River settlement, Manitoba, in which five hundred and forty carts

proceeded to the range. Previous to that time the buffaloes were found

near enough to the settlements around Fort Garry that every settler

could hunt independently; but as the herds were driven farther and

farther away, it required an organized effort and a long journey to

reach them.

The American Fur Company established trading posts along the Missouri

River, one at the mouth of the Tetón River and another at the mouth of

the Yellowstone. In 1826 a post was established at the eastern base of

the Rocky Mountains, at the head of the Arkansas River, and in 1832

another was located in a corresponding situation at the head of the

South Fork of the Platte, close to where Denver now stands. Both the

latter were on what was then the western border of the buffalo range.

Elsewhere throughout the buffalo country there were numerous other

posts, always situated as near as possible to the best hunting ground,

and at the same time where they would be most accessible to the hunters,

both white and red.

As might be supposed, the Indians were encouraged to kill buffaloes for

their robes, and this is what Mr. George Catlin wrote at the mouth of

the Tetón River (Pyatt County, Dakota) in 1832 concerning this

trade:[63]

"It seems hard and cruel (does it not?) that we civilized people, with

all the luxuries and comforts of the world about us, should be drawing

from the backs of these useful animals the skins for our luxury, leaving

their carcasses to be devoured by the wolves; that we should draw from

that country some one hundred and fifty or two hundred thousand of their

robes annually, the greater part of which are taken from animals that

are killed expressly for the robe, at a season when the meat is not

cured and preserved, and for each of which skins the Indian has received

but a pint of whisky! Such is the fact, and that number, or near it, are

annually destroyed, in addition to the number that is necessarily killed

for the subsistence of three hundred thousand Indians, who live chiefly

upon them."

The author further declared that the fur trade in those "great western

realms" was then limited chiefly to the purchase of buffalo robes.

1. \_The Red River half-breeds.\_--In June, 1840, when the Red River

half-breeds assembled at Pembina for their annual expedition against the

buffalo, they mustered as follows:

+-------------------------------------+

|Carts |1,210|

+-------------------------+-----+-----+

|Hunters | 620| |

+-------------------------+-----+ |

|Women | 650|1,630|

+-------------------------+-----+ |

|Boys and girls | 360| |

+-------------------------+-----+-----+

|Horses (buffalo runners) | 403|

+-------------------------------+-----+

|Dogs | 542|

+-------------------------------+-----+

|Cart horses | 655|

+-------------------------------+-----+

|Draught oxen | 586|

+-------------------------------+-----+

|Skinning knives |1,240|

+-------------------------------------+

The total value of the property employed in this expedition and the

working time occupied by it (two months) amounted to the enormous sum of

£24,000.

[Note 63: North American Indians, I, p. 263.]

Although the bison formerly ranged to Fort Garry (near Winnipeg), they

had been steadily killed off and driven back, and in 1840 none were

found by the expedition until it was 250 miles from Pembina, which is

situated on the Red River, at the international boundary. At that time

the extinction of the species from the Red River to the Cheyenne was

practically complete. The Red River settlers, aided, of course, by the

Indians of that region, are responsible for the extermination of the

bison throughout northeastern Dakota as far as the Cheyenne River,

northern Minnesota, and the whole of what is now the province of

Manitoba. More than that; as the game grew scarce and retired farther

and farther, the half-breeds, who despised agriculture as long as there

was a buffalo to kill, extended their hunting operations westward along

the Qu'Appelle until they encroached upon the hunting-grounds of the

Plain Crees, who lived in the Saskatchewan country.

Thus was an immense inroad made in the northern half of the herd which

had previously covered the entire pasture region from the Great Slave

Lake to central Texas. This was the first visible impression of the

systematic killing which began in 1820. Up to 1840 it is reasonably

certain, as will be seen by figures given elsewhere, that by this

business-like method of the half-breeds, at least 652,000 buffaloes were

destroyed by them alone.

Even as early as 1840 the Red River hunt was prosecuted through Dakota

southwestwardly to the Missouri River and a short distance beyond it.

Here it touched the wide strip of territory, bordering that stream,

which was even then being regularly drained of its animal resources by

the Indian hunters, who made the river their base of operations, and

whose robes were shipped on its steam-boats.

It is certain that these annual Red River expeditions into Dakota were

kept up as late as 1847, and as long thereafter as buffaloes were to be

found in any number between the Cheyenne and the Missouri. At the same

time, the White Horse Plains division, which hunted westward from Fort

Garry, did its work of destruction quite as rapidly and as thoroughly as

the rival expedition to the United States.

In 1857 the Plains Crees, inhabiting the country around the headwaters

of the Qu'Appelle River (250 miles due west from Winnipeg), assembled in

council, and "determined that in consequence of promises often made and

broken by the white men and half-breeds, and the rapid destruction by

them of the buffalo they fed on, they would not permit either white men

or half-breeds to hunt in their country, or travel through it, except

for the purpose of trading for their dried meat, pemmican, skins and

robes."

In 1858 the Crees reported that between the two branches of the

Saskatchewan buffalo were "very scarce." Professor Hind's expedition saw

only one buffalo in the whole course of their journey from Winnipeg

until they reached Sand Hill Lake, at the head of the Qu'Appelle, near

the south branch of the Saskatchewan, where the first herd was

encountered. Although the species was not totally extinct on the

Qu'Appelle at that time, it was practically so.

2. \_The country of the Sioux.\_--The next territory completely

depopulated of buffaloes by systematic hunting was very nearly the

entire southern half of Dakota, southwestern Minnesota, and northern

Nebraska as far as the North Platte. This vast region, once the favorite

range for hundreds of thousands of buffaloes, had for many years been

the favorite hunting ground of the Sioux Indians of the Missouri, the

Pawnees, Omahas, and all other tribes of that region. The settlement of

Iowa and Minnesota presently forced into this region the entire body of

Mississippi Sioux from the country west of Prairie du Chien and around

Fort Snelling, and materially hastened the extermination of all the game

animals which were once so abundant there. It is absolutely certain that

if the Indians had been uninfluenced by the white traders, or, in other

words, had not been induced to take and prepare a large number of robes

every year for the market, the species would have survived very much

longer than it did. But the demand quickly proved to be far greater than

the supply. The Indians, of course, found it necessary to slaughter

annually a great number of buffaloes for their own wants--for meat,

robes, leather, teepees, etc. When it came to supplementing this

necessary slaughter by an additional fifty thousand or more every year

for marketable robes, it is no wonder that the improvident savages soon

found, when too late, that the supply of buffaloes was not

inexhaustible. Naturally enough, they attributed their disappearance to

the white man, who was therefore a robber, and a proper subject for the

scalping-knife. Apparently it never occurred to the minds of the Sioux

that they themselves were equally to blame; it was always \_the paleface\_

who killed the buffaloes; and it was always \_Sioux\_ buffaloes that they

killed. The Sioux seemed to feel that they held a chattel mortgage on

all the buffaloes north of the Platte, and it required more than one

pitched battle to convince them otherwise.

Up to the time when the great Sioux Reservation was established in

Dakota (1875-'77), when 33,739 square miles of country, or nearly the

whole southwest quarter of the Territory, was set aside for the

exclusive occupancy of the Sioux, buffaloes were very numerous

throughout that entire region. East of the Missouri River, which is the

eastern boundary of the Sioux Reservation, from Bismarck all the way

down, the species was practically extinct as early as 1870. But at the

time when it became unlawful for white hunters to enter the territory of

the Sioux nation there were tens of thousands of buffaloes upon it, and

their subsequent slaughter is chargeable to the Indians alone, save as

to those which migrated into the hunting grounds of the whites.

3. \_Western railways, and their part in the extermination of the

buffalo.\_--The building of a railroad means the speedy extermination of

all the big game along its line. In its eagerness to attract the public

and build up "a big business," every new line which traverses a country

containing game does its utmost, by means of advertisements and posters,

to attract the man with a gun. Its game resorts are all laid bare, and

the market hunters and sportsmen swarm in immediately, slaying and to

slay.

Within the last year the last real retreat for our finest game, the only

remaining stronghold for the mountain sheep, goat, caribou, elk, and

deer--northwestern Montana, northern Idaho, and thence westward--has

been laid open to the very heart by the building of the St. Paul,

Minneapolis and Manitoba Railway, which runs up the valley of the Milk

River to Fort Assinniboine, and crosses the Rocky Mountains through Two

Medicine Pass. Heretofore that region has been so difficult to reach

that the game it contains has been measurably secure from general

slaughter; but now it also must "go."

The marking out of the great overland trail by the Argonauts of '49 in

their rush for the gold fields of California was the foreshadowing of

the great east-and-west breach in the universal herd, which was made

twenty years later by the first transcontinental railway.

The pioneers who "crossed the plains" in those days killed buffaloes for

food whenever they could, and the constant harrying of those animals

experienced along the line of travel, soon led them to retire from the

proximity of such continual danger. It was undoubtedly due to this cause

that the number seen by parties who crossed the plains in 1849 and

subsequently, was surprisingly small. But, fortunately for the

buffaloes, the pioneers who would gladly have halted and turned aside

now and then for the excitement of the chase, were compelled to hurry

on, and accomplish the long journey while good weather lasted. It was

owing to this fact, and the scarcity of good horses, that the buffaloes

found it necessary to retire only a few miles from the wagon route to

get beyond the reach of those who would have gladly hunted them.

Mr. Allen Varner, of Indianola, Illinois, has kindly furnished me with

the following facts in regard to the presence of the buffalo, as

observed by him during his journey westward, over what was then known as

the Oregon Trail.

"The old Oregon trail ran from Independence, Missouri, to old Fort

Laramie, through the South Pass of the Rocky Mountains, and thence up to

Salt Lake City. We left Independence on May C, 1849, and struck the

Platte River at Grand Island. The trail had been traveled but very

little previous to that year. We saw no buffaloes whatever until we

reached the forks of the Platte, on May 20, or thereabouts. There we saw

seventeen head. From that time on we saw small bunches now and then;

never more than forty or fifty together. We saw no great herds anywhere,

and I should say we did not see over five hundred head all told. The

most western point at which we saw buffaloes was about due north of

Laramie Peak, and it must have been about the 20th of June. We killed

several head for meat during our trip, and found them all rather thin

in flesh. Plainsmen who claimed to know, said that all the buffaloes we

saw had wintered in that locality, and had not had time to get fat. The

annual migration from the south had not yet begun, or rather had not yet

brought any of the southern buffaloes that far north."

In a few years the tide of overland travel became so great, that the

buffaloes learned to keep away from the dangers of the trail, and many a

pioneer has crossed the plains without ever seeing a live buffalo.

4. \_The division of the universal herd.\_--Until the building of the

first transcontinental railway made it possible to market the "buffalo

product," buffalo hunting as a business was almost wholly in the hands

of the Indians. Even then, the slaughter so far exceeded the natural

increase that the narrowing limits of the buffalo range was watched with

anxiety, and the ultimate extinction of the species confidently

predicted. Even without railroads the extermination of the race would

have taken place eventually, but it would have been delayed perhaps

twenty years. With a recklessness of the future that was not to be

expected of savages, though perhaps perfectly natural to civilized white

men, who place the possession of a dollar above everything else, the

Indians with one accord singled out the \_cows\_ for slaughter, because

their robes and their flesh better suited the fastidious taste of the

noble redskin. The building of the Union Pacific Railway began at Omaha

in 1865, and during that year 40 miles were constructed. The year

following saw the completion of 265 miles more, and in 1867 245 miles

were added, which brought it to Cheyenne. In 1868, 350 miles were built,

and in 1869 the entire line was open to traffic.

In 1867, when Maj. J. W. Powell and Prof. A. H. Thompson crossed the

plains by means of the Union Pacific Railway as far as it was

constructed and thence onward by wagon, they saw during the entire trip

only one live buffalo, a solitary old bull, wandering aimlessly along

the south bank of the Platte River.

The completion of the Union Pacific Railway divided forever the

buffaloes of the United States into two great herds, which thereafter

became known respectively as the northern and southern herds. Both

retired rapidly and permanently from the railway, and left a strip of

country over 50 miles wide almost uninhabited by them. Although many

thousand buffaloes were killed by hunters who made the Union Pacific

Railway their base of operations, the two great bodies retired north and

south so far that the greater number were beyond striking distance from

that line.

5. \_The destruction of the southern herd.\_--The geographical center of

the great southern herd during the few years of its separate existence

previous to its destruction was very near the present site of Garden

City, Kansas. On the east, even as late as 1872, thousands of buffaloes

ranged within 10 miles of Wichita, which was then the headquarters of a

great number of buffalo-hunters, who plied their occupation vigorously

during the winter. On the north the herd ranged within 25 miles of the

Union Pacific, until the swarm of hunters coming down from the north

drove them farther and farther south. On the west, a few small bands

ranged as far as Pike's Peak and the South Park, but the main body

ranged east of the town of Pueblo, Colorado. In the southwest, buffaloes

were abundant as far as the Pecos and the Staked Plains, while the

southern limit of the herd was about on a line with the southern

boundary of New Mexico. Regarding this herd, Colonel Dodge writes as

follows: "Their most prized feeding ground was the section of country

between the South Platte and Arkansas rivers, watered by the Republican,

Smoky, Walnut, Pawnee, and other parallel or tributary streams, and

generally known as the Republican country. Hundreds of thousands went

south from here each winter, but hundreds of thousands remained. It was

the chosen home of the buffalo."

Although the range of the northern herd covered about twice as much

territory as did the southern, the latter contained probably twice as

many buffaloes. The number of individuals in the southern herd in the

year 1871 must have been at least three millions, and most estimates

place the total much higher than that.

During the years from 1866 to 1871, inclusive, the Atchison, Topeka and

Santa Fé Railway and what is now known as the Kansas Pacific, or Kansas

division of the Union Pacific Railway, were constructed from the

Missouri River westward across Kansas, and through the heart of the

southern buffalo range. The southern herd was literally cut to pieces by

railways, and every portion of its range rendered easily accessible.

There had always been a market for buffalo robes at a fair price, and as

soon as the railways crossed the buffalo country the slaughter began.

The rush to the range was only surpassed by the rush to the gold mines

of California in earlier years. The railroad builders, teamsters,

fortune-seekers, "professional" hunters, trappers, guides, and every one

out of a job turned out to hunt buffalo for hides and meat. The

merchants who had already settled in all the little towns along the

three great railways saw an opportunity to make money out of the buffalo

product, and forthwith began to organize and supply hunting parties with

arms, ammunition, and provisions, and send them to the range. An immense

business of this kind was done by the merchants of Dodge City (Fort

Dodge), Wichita, and Leavenworth, and scores of smaller towns did a

corresponding amount of business in the same line. During the years 1871

to 1874 but little else was done in that country except buffalo killing.

Central depots were established in the best buffalo country, from whence

hunting parties operated in all directions. Buildings were erected for

the curing of meat, and corrals were built in which to heap up the

immense piles of buffalo skins that accumulated. At Dodge City, as late

as 1878, Professor Thompson saw a lot of baled buffalo skins in a

corral, the solid cubical contents of which he calculated to equal 120

cords.

At first the utmost wastefulness prevailed. Every one wanted to kill

buffalo, and no one was willing to do the skinning and curing. Thousands

upon thousands of buffaloes were killed for their tongues alone, and

never skinned. Thousands more were wounded by unskillful marksmen and

wandered off to die and become a total loss. But the climax of

wastefulness and sloth was not reached until the enterprising

buffalo-butcher began to skin his dead buffaloes by horse-power. The

process is of interest, as showing the depth of degradation to which a

man can fall and still call himself a hunter. The skin of the buffalo

was ripped open along the belly and throat, the legs cut around at the

knees, and ripped up the rest of the way. The skin of the neck was

divided all the way around at the back of the head, and skinned back a

few inches to afford a start. A stout iron bar, like a hitching post,

was then driven through the skull and about 18 inches into the earth,

after which a rope was tied very firmly to the thick skin of the neck,

made ready for that purpose. The other end of this rope was then hitched

to the whiffletree of a pair of horses, or to the rear axle of a wagon,

the horses were whipped up, and the skin was forthwith either torn in

two or torn off the buffalo with about 50 pounds of flesh adhering to

it. It soon became apparent to even the most enterprising buffalo

skinner that this method was not an unqualified success, and it was

presently abandoned.

The slaughter which began in 1871 was prosecuted with great vigor and

enterprise in 1872, and reached its heighten 1873. By that time, the

buffalo country fairly swarmed with hunters, each, party putting forth

its utmost efforts to destroy more buffaloes than its rivals. By that

time experience had taught the value of thorough organization, and the

butchering was done in a more business-like way. By a coincidence that

proved fatal to the bison, it was just at the beginning of the slaughter

that breech-loading, long-range rifles attained what was practically

perfection. The Sharps 40-90 or 45-120, and the Remington were the

favorite weapons of the buffalo-hunter, the former being the one in most

general use. Before the leaden hail of thousands of these deadly

breech-loaders the buffaloes went down at the rate of several thousand

daily during the hunting season.

During the years 1871 and 1872 the most wanton wastefulness prevailed.

Colonel Dodge declares that, though hundreds of thousands of skins were

sent to market, they scarcely indicated the extent of the slaughter.

Through want of skill in shooting and want of knowledge in preserving

the hides of those slain by green hunters, \_one hide sent to market

represented three, four, or even five dead buffalo\_. The skinners and

curers knew so little of the proper mode of curing hides, that at least

half of those actually taken were lost. In the summer and fall of 1872

one hide sent to market represented at least \_three\_ dead buffalo. This

condition of affairs rapidly improved; but such was the furor for

slaughter, and the ignorance of all concerned, that every hide sent to

market in 1871 represented no less than \_five\_ dead buffalo.

By 1873 the condition of affairs had somewhat improved, through better

organization of the hunting parties and knowledge gained by experience

in curing. For all that, however, buffaloes were still so exceedingly

plentiful, and shooting was so much easier than skinning, the latter was

looked upon as a necessary evil and still slighted to such an extent

that every hide actually sold and delivered represented two dead

buffaloes.

In 1874 the slaughterers began to take alarm at the increasing scarcity

of buffalo, and the skinners, having a much smaller number of dead

animals to take care of than ever before, were able to devote more time

to each subject and do their work properly. As a result, Colonel Dodge

estimated that during 1874, and from that time on, one hundred skins

delivered represented not more than one hundred and twenty-five dead

buffaloes; but that "no parties have ever got the proportion lower than

this."

The great southern herd was slaughtered by still-hunting, a method which

has already been fully described. A typical hunting party is thus

described by Colonel Dodge:[64]

"The most approved party consisted of four men--one shooter, two

skinners, and one man to cook, stretch hides, and take care of camp.

Where buffalo were very plentiful the number of skinners was increased.

A light wagon, drawn by two horses or mules, takes the outfit into the

wilderness, and brings into camp the skins taken each day. The outfit is

most meager: a sack of flour, a side of bacon, 5 pounds of coffee, tea,

and sugar, a little salt, and possibly a few beans, is a month's supply.

A common or "A" tent furnishes shelter; a couple of blankets for each

man is a bed. One or more of Sharps or Remington's heaviest sporting

rifles, and an unlimited supply of ammunition, is the armament; while a

coffee-pot, Dutch-oven, frying-pan, four tin plates, and four tin cups

constitute the kitchen and table furniture.

"The skinning knives do duty at the platter, and 'fingers were made

before forks.' Nor must be forgotten one or more 10-gallon kegs for

water, as the camp may of necessity be far away from a stream. The

supplies are generally furnished by the merchant for whom the party is

working, who, in addition, pays each of the party a specified percentage

of the value of the skins delivered. The shooter is carefully selected

for his skill and knowledge of the habits of the buffalo. He is captain

and leader of the party. When all is ready, he plunges into the

wilderness, going to the center of the best buffalo region known to him,

not already occupied (for there are unwritten regulations recognized as

laws, giving to each hunter certain rights of discovery and occupancy).

Arrived at the position, he makes his camp in some hidden ravine or

thicket, and makes all ready for work."

[Note 64: Plains of the Great West, p. 134.]

Of course the slaughter was greatest along the lines of the three great

railways--the Kansas Pacific, the Atchison, Topeka and Santa Fé, and the

Union Pacific, about in the order named. It reached its height in the

season of 1873. During that year the Atchison, Topeka and Santa Fé

Railroad carried out of the buffalo country 251,443 robes, 1,017,600

pounds of meat, and 2,743,100 pounds of bones. The end of the southern

herd was then near at hand. Could the southern buffalo range have been

roofed over at that time it would have made one vast charnel-house.

Putrifying carcasses, many of them with the hide still on, lay thickly

scattered over thousands of square miles of the level prairie, poisoning

the air and water and offending the sight. The remaining herds had

become mere scattered bands, harried and driven hither and thither by

the hunters, who now swarmed almost as thickly as the buffaloes. A

cordon of camps was established along the Arkansas River, the South

Platte, the Republican, and the few other streams that contained water,

and when the thirsty animals came to drink they were attacked and driven

away, and with the most fiendish persistency kept from slaking their

thirst, so that they would again be compelled to seek the river and come

within range of the deadly breech-loaders. Colonel Dodge declares that

in places favorable to such warfare, as the south bank of the Platte, a

herd of buffalo has, by shooting at it by day and by lighting fires and

firing guns at night, been kept from water until it has been entirely

destroyed. In the autumn of 1873, when Mr. William Blackmore traveled

for some 30 or 40 miles along the north bank of the Arkansas River to

the east of Port Dodge, "there was a continuous line of putrescent

carcasses, so that the air was rendered pestilential and offensive to

the last degree. The hunters had formed a line of camps along the banks

of the river, and had shot down the buffalo, night and morning, as they

came to drink. In order to give an idea of the number of these

carcasses, it is only necessary to mention that I counted sixty-seven on

one spot not covering 4 acres."

White hunters were not allowed to hunt in the Indian Territory, but the

southern boundary of the State of Kansas was picketed by them, and a

herd no sooner crossed the line going north than it was destroyed. Every

water-hole was guarded by a camp of hunters, and whenever a thirsty herd

approached, it was promptly met by rifle-bullets.

During this entire period the slaughter of buffaloes was universal. The

man who desired buffalo meat for food almost invariably killed five

times as many animals as he could utilize, and after cutting from each

victim its very choicest parts--the \_tongue alone\_, possibly, or perhaps

the hump and hind quarters, one or the other, or both--fully four-fifths

of the really edible portion of the carcass would be left to the wolves.

It was no uncommon thing for a man to bring in two barrels of salted

buffalo tongues, without another pound of meat or a solitary robe. The

tongues were purchased at 25 cents each and sold in the markets farther

east at 50 cents. In those days of criminal wastefulness it was a very

common thing for buffaloes to be slaughtered for their tongues alone.

Mr. George Catlin[65] relates that a few days previous to his arrival at

the mouth of the Tetón River (Dakota), in 1832, "an immense herd of

buffaloes had showed themselves on the opposite side of the river,"

whereupon a party of five or six hundred Sioux Indians on horseback

forded the river, attacked the herd, recrossed the river about sunset,

and came into the fort with fourteen hundred fresh buffalo tongues,

which were thrown down in a mass, and for which they required only a few

gallons of whisky, which was soon consumed in "a little harmless

carouse." Mr. Catlin states that from all that he could learn not a skin

or a pound of meat, other than the tongues, was saved after this awful

slaughter.

[Note 65: North American Indians, I, 256.]

Judging from all accounts, it is making a safe estimate to say that

probably no fewer than fifty thousand buffaloes have been killed for

their tongues alone, and the most of these are undoubtedly chargeable

against white men, who ought to have known better.

A great deal has been said about the slaughter of buffaloes by foreign

sportsmen, particularly Englishmen; but I must say that, from all that

can be ascertained on this point, this element of destruction has been

greatly exaggerated and overestimated. It is true that every English

sportsman who visited this country in the days of the buffalo always

resolved to have, and did have, "a buffalo hunt," and usually under the

auspices of United States Army officers. Undoubtedly these parties did

kill hundreds of buffaloes, but it is very doubtful whether the

aggregate of the number slain by foreign sportsmen would run up higher

than ten thousand. Indeed, for myself, I am well convinced that there

are many old ex-still-hunters yet living, each of whom is accountable

for a greater number of victims than all buffaloes killed by foreign

sportsmen would make added together. The professional butchers were very

much given to crying out against "them English lords," and holding up

their hands in holy horror at buffaloes killed by them for their heads,

instead of for hides to sell at a dollar apiece; but it is due the

American public to say that all this outcry was received at its true

value and deceived very few. By those in possession of the facts it was

recognized as "a blind," to divert public opinion from the real

culprits.

Nevertheless it is very true that many men who were properly classed as

sportsmen, in contradistinction from the pot-hunters, did engage in

useless and inexcusable slaughter to an extent that was highly

reprehensible, to say the least. A sportsman is not supposed to kill

game wantonly, when it can be of no possible use to himself or any one

else, but a great many do it for all that. Indeed, the sportsman who

kills sparingly and conscientiously is rather the exception than the

rule. Colonel Dodge thus refers to the work of some foreign sportsmen:

"In the fall of that year [1872] three English gentlemen went out with

me for a short hunt, and in their excitement bagged more buffalo than

would have supplied a brigade." As a general thing, however, the

professional sportsmen who went out to have a buffalo hunt for the

excitement of the chase and the trophies it yielded, nearly always found

the bison so easy a victim, and one whose capture brought so little

glory to the hunter, that the chase was voted very disappointing, and

soon abandoned in favor of nobler game. In those days there was no more

to boast of in killing a buffalo than in the assassination of a Texas

steer.

It was, then, the hide-hunters, white and red, but especially white, who

wiped out the great southern herd in four short years. The prices

received for hides varied considerably, according to circumstances, but

for the green or undressed article it usually ranged from 50 cents for

the skins of calves to $1.25 for those of adult animals in good

condition. Such prices seem ridiculously small, but when it is

remembered that, when buffaloes were plentiful it was no uncommon thing

for a hunter to kill from forty to sixty head in a day, it will readily

be seen that the \_chances\_ of making very handsome profits were

sufficient to tempt hunters to make extraordinary exertions. Moreover,

even when the buffaloes were nearly gone, the country was overrun with

men who had absolutely nothing else to look to as a means of livelihood,

and so, no matter whether the profits were great or small, so long as

enough buffaloes remained to make it possible to get a living by their

pursuit, they were hunted down with the most determined persistency and

pertinacity.

6. \_Statistics of the slaughter.\_--The most careful and reliable

estimate ever made of results of the slaughter of the southern buffalo

herd is that of Col. Richard Irving Dodge, and it is the only one I know

of which furnishes a good index of the former size of that herd.

Inasmuch as this calculation was based on actual statistics,

supplemented by personal observations and inquiries made in that region

during the great slaughter, I can do no better than to quote Colonel

Dodge almost in full.[66]

[Note 66: Plains of the Great West, pp. 139-144.]

The Atchison, Topeka and Santa Fé Railroad furnished the following

statistics of the buffalo product carried by it during the years 1872,

1873, and 1874:

+----------------------------------------------------+

| \_Buffalo product.\_ |

+----------------------------------------------------+

| | No. of skins | | |

|Year. | carried. | Meat carried. | Bone carried.|

+----------------------------------------------------+

| | | Pounds. | Pounds. |

|1872 | 165,721 | ... | 1,135,300 |

|1873 | 251,443 | 1,617,600 | 2,743,100 |

|1874 | 42,289 | 632,800 | 6,914,950 |

+------|--------------|---------------|--------------+

|Total | 459,453 | 2,250,400 | 10,793,350 |

+----------------------------------------------------+

The officials of the Kansas Pacific and Union Pacific railroads either

could not or would not furnish any statistics of the amount of the

buffalo product carried by their lines during this period, and it became

necessary to proceed without the actual figures in both cases. Inasmuch

as the Kansas Pacific road cuts through a portion of the buffalo country

which was in every respect as thickly inhabited by those animals as the

region traversed by the Atchison, Topeka and Santa Fé, it seemed

absolutely certain that the former road hauled out fully as many hides

as the latter, if not more, and its quota is so set down. The Union

Pacific line handled a much smaller number of buffalo hides than either

of its southern rivals, but Colonel Dodge believes that this, "with the

smaller roads which touch the buffalo region, taken together, carried

about as much as either of the two principal buffalo roads."

Colonel Dodge considers it reasonably certain that the statistics

furnished by the Atchison, Topeka and Santa Fé road represent only

one-third of the entire buffalo product, and there certainly appears to

be good ground for this belief. It is therefore in order to base further

calculations upon these figures.

According to evidence gathered on the spot by Colonel Dodge during the

period of the great slaughter, one hide sent to market in 1872

represented three dead buffaloes, in 1873 two, and in 1874 one hundred

skins delivered represented one hundred and twenty-five dead animals.

The total slaughter by white men was therefore about as below:

+---------------------------------------------------------------+

|Year.|Hides |Hides |Total |Total |Total |

| |shipped |shipped |number of |number |of buffaloes|

| |by A., T.|by other |buffaloes |killed and|slaughtered |

| |and S. F.|roads, |utilized. |wasted. |by whites. |

| |railway. |same | | | |

| | |period. | | | |

| | |(estimated)| | | |

+-----+---------+-----------+-----------+----------+------------+

|1872 | 165,721 | 331,442 | 497,163 | 994,326| 1,491,489 |

|1873 | 251,443 | 502,886 | 754,329 | 754,329| 1,508,658 |

|1874 | 42,289 | 84,578 | 126,867 | 31,716| 158,583 |

|Total| 459,453 | 918,906 |1,378,359 | 1,780,481| 3,158,730 |

+---------------------------------------------------------------+

During all this time the Indians of all tribes within striking distance

of the herds killed an immense number of buffaloes every year. In the

summer they killed for the hairless hides to use for lodges and for

leather, and in the autumn they slaughtered for robes and meat, but

particularly robes, which were all they could offer the white trader in

exchange for his goods. They were too lazy and shiftless to cure much

buffalo meat, and besides it was not necessary, for the Government fed

them. In regard to the number of buffaloes of the southern herd killed

by the Indians, Colonel Dodge arrives at an estimate, as follows:

"It is much more difficult to estimate the number of dead buffalo

represented by the Indian-tanned skins or robes sent to market. This

number varies with the different tribes, and their greater or less

contact with the whites. Thus, the Cheyennes, Arapahoes, and Kiowas of

the southern plains, having less contact with whites, use skins for

their lodges, clothing, bedding, par-fléches, saddles, lariats, for

almost everything. The number of robes sent to market represent only

what we may call the foreign exchange of these tribes, and is really not

more than one-tenth of the skins taken. To be well within bounds I will

assume that one robe sent to market by these Indians represents six dead

buffaloes.

"Those bands of Sioux who live at the agencies, and whose peltries are

taken to market by the Union Pacific Railroad, live in lodges of cotton

cloth furnished by the Indian Bureau. They use much civilized clothing,

bedding, boxes, ropes, etc. For these luxuries they must pay in robes,

and as the buffalo range is far from wide, and their yearly 'crop'

small, more than half of it goes to market."

Leaving out of the account at this point all consideration of the

killing done north of the Union Pacific Railroad, Colonel Dodge's

figures are as follows:

\_Southern buffaloes slaughtered by southern Indians.\_

+-----------------------------------------------------------------+

| |Sent to |No. of dead |

| Indians. |market. |buffaloes |

| | |represented.|

+-----------------------------------------+----------+------------+

| | | |

|Kiowas, Comanches, Cheyennes, Arapahoes, | | |

|and other Indians whose robes go over the| | |

|Atchison, Topeka and Santa Fé Railroad | 19,000 | 114,000 |

|Sioux at agencies, Union Pacific Railroad| 10,000 | 16,000 |

| +----------+------------+

|Total slaughtered per annum | 29,000 | 130,000 |

|Total for the three years 1872-1874 | ... | 390,000 |

+-----------------------------------------------------------------+

Reference has already been made to the fact that during those years an

immense number of buffaloes were killed by the farmers of eastern Kansas

and Nebraska for their meat. Mr. William Mitchell, of Wabaunsee, Kansas,

stated to the writer that "in those days, when buffaloes were plentiful

in western Kansas, pretty much everybody made a trip West in the fall

and brought back a load of buffalo meat. Everybody had it in abundance

as long as buffaloes remained in any considerable number. Very few skins

were saved; in fact, hardly any, for the reason that nobody knew how to

tan them, and they always spoiled. At first a great many farmers tried

to dress the green hides that they brought back, but they could not

succeed, and finally gave up trying. Of course, a great deal of the meat

killed was wasted, for only the best parts were brought back."

The Wichita (Kansas) \_World\_ of February 9, 1889, contains the following

reference:

"In 1871 and 1872 the buffalo ranged within 10 miles of Wichita, and

could be counted by the thousands. The town, then in its infancy, was

the headquarters for a vast number of buffalo-hunters, who plied their

occupation vigorously during the winter. The buffalo were killed

principally for their hides, and daily wagon trains arrived in town

loaded with them. Meat was very cheap in those days; fine, tender

buffalo steak selling from 1 to 2 cents per pound. \* \* \* The business

was quite profitable for a time, but a sudden drop in the price of hides

brought them down as low as 25 and 50 cents each. \* \* \* It was a very

common thing in those days for people living in Wichita to start out in

the morning and return by evening with a wagon load of buffalo meat."

Unquestionably a great many thousand buffaloes were killed annually by

the settlers of Kansas, Nebraska, Texas, New Mexico, and Colorado, and

the mountain Indians living west of the great range. The number so slain

can only be guessed at, for there is absolutely no data on which to

found an estimate. Judging merely from the number of people within reach

of the range, it may safely be estimated that the total number of

buffaloes slaughtered annually to satisfy the wants of this

heterogeneous element could not have been less than fifty thousand, and

probably was a much higher number. This, for the three years, would make

one hundred and fifty thousand, and the grand total would therefore be

about as follows:

+------------------------------------------------------+

| \_The slaughter of the southern herd.\_ |

+------------------------------------------------------+

|Killed by "professional" white hunters in | |

| 1872, 1873, and 1874 | 3,158,730 |

|Killed by Indians, same period | 390,000 |

|Killed by settlers and mountain Indians | 150,000 |

| | --------- |

| Total slaughter in three years | 3,098,730 |

+------------------------------------------------------+

These figures seem incredible, but unfortunately there is not the

slightest reason for believing they are too high. There are many men now

living who declare that during the great slaughter they each killed from

twenty-five hundred to three thousand buffaloes every year. With

thousands of hunters on the range, and such possibilities of slaughter

before each, it is, after all, no wonder that an average of nearly a

million and a quarter of buffaloes fell each year during that bloody

period.

By the close of the hunting season of 1875 the great southern herd had

ceased to exist. As a body, it had been utterly annihilated. The main

body of the survivors, numbering about ten thousand head, fled

southwest, and dispersed through that great tract of wild, desolate, and

inhospitable country stretching southward from the Cimarron country

across the "Public Land Strip," the Pan-handle of Texas, and the Llano

Estacado, or Staked Plain, to the Pecos River. A few small bands of

stragglers maintained a precarious existence for a few years longer on

the headwaters of the Republican River and in southwestern Nebraska,

near Ogalalla, where calves were caught alive as late as 1885. Wild

buffaloes were seen in southwestern Kansas for the last time in 1886,

and the two or three score of individuals still living in the Canadian

River country of the Texas Pan-handle are the last wild survivors of the

great Southern herd.

The main body of the fugitives which survived the great slaughter of

1871-'74 continued to attract hunters who were very "hard up," who

pursued them, often at the risk of their own lives, even into the

terrible Llano Estacado. In Montana in 1886 I met on a cattle ranch an

ex-buffalo-hunter from Texas, named Harry Andrews, who from 1874 to 1876

continued in pursuit of the scattered remnants of the great southern

herd through the Pan-handle of Texas and on into the Staked Plain

itself. By that time the market had become completely overstocked with

robes, and the prices received by Andrews and other hunters was only 65

cents each for cow robes and $1.15 each for bull robes, delivered on the

range, the purchaser providing for their transportation to the railway.

But even at those prices, which were so low as to make buffalo killing

seem like downright murder, Mr. Andrews assured me that he "made big

money." On one occasion, when he "got a stand" on a large bunch of

buffalo, he fired one hundred and fifteen shots from one spot, and

killed sixty-three buffaloes in about an hour.

In 1880 buffalo hunting as a business ceased forever in the Southwest,

and so far as can be ascertained, but one successful hunt for robes has

been made in that region since that time. That occurred in the fall and

winter of 1887, about 100 miles north of Tascosa, Texas, when two

parties, one of which was under the leadership of Lee Howard, attacked

the only band of buffaloes left alive in the Southwest, and which at

that time numbered about two hundred head. The two parties killed

fifty-two buffaloes, of which ten skins were preserved entire for

mounting. Of the remaining forty-two, the heads were cut off and

preserved for mounting and the skins were prepared as robes. The

mountable skins were finally sold at the following prices: Young cows,

$50 to $60; adult cows, $75 to $100; adult bull, $150. The unmounted

heads sold as follows: Young bulls, $25 to $30; adult bulls, $50; young

cows, $10 to $12; adult cows, $15 to $25. A few of the choicest robes

sold at $20 each, and the remainder, a lot of twenty eight, of prime

quality and in excellent condition, were purchased by the Hudson's Bay

Fur Company for $350.

Such was the end of the great southern herd. In 1871 it contained

certainly no fewer than three million buffaloes, and by the beginning of

1875 its existence as a herd had utterly ceased, and nothing but

scattered, fugitive bands remained.

7. \_The Destruction of the Northern Herd.\_--Until the building of the

Northern Pacific Railway there were but two noteworthy outlets for the

buffalo robes that were taken annually in the Northwestern Territories

of the United States. The principal one was the Missouri River, and the

Yellowstone River was the other. Down these streams the hides were

transported by steam-boats to the nearest railway shipping point. For

fifty years prior to the building of the Northern Pacific Railway in

1880-'82, the number of robes marketed every year by way of these

streams was estimated variously at from fifty to one hundred thousand.

A great number of hides taken in the British Possessions fell into the

hands of the Hudson's Bay Company, and found a market in Canada.

In May, 1881, the Sioux City (Iowa) \_Journal\_ contained the following

information in regard to the buffalo robe "crop" of the previous hunting

season--the winter of 1880-'81:

"It is estimated by competent authorities that one hundred thousand

buffalo hides will be shipped out of the Yellowstone country this

season. Two firms alone are negotiating for the transportation of

twenty-five thousand hides each. \* \* \* Most of our citizens saw the big

load of buffalo hides that the \_C. K. Peck\_ brought down last season, a

load that hid everything about the boat below the roof of the hurricane

deck. There were ten thousand hides in that load, and they were all

brought out of the Yellowstone on one trip and transferred to the \_C. K.

Peck\_. How such a load could have been piled on the little \_Terry\_ not

even the men on the boat appear to know. It hid every part of the boat,

barring only the pilot-house and smoke-stacks. But such a load will not

be attempted again. For such boats as ply the Yellowstone there are at

least fifteen full loads of buffalo hides and other pelts. Reckoning one

thousand hides to three car loads, and adding to this fifty cars for the

other pelts, it will take at least three hundred and fifty box-cars to

carry this stupendous bulk of peltry East to market. These figures are

not guesses, but estimates made by men whose business it is to know

about the amount of hides and furs awaiting shipment.

"Nothing like it has ever been known in the history of the fur trade.

Last season the output of buffalo hides was above the average, and last

year only about thirty thousand hides came out of the Yellowstone

country, or less than a third of what is there now awaiting shipment The

past severe winter caused the buffalo to bunch themselves in a few

valleys where there was pasturage, and there the slaughter went on all

winter. There was no sport about it, simply shooting down the

famine-tamed animals as cattle might be shot down in a barn-yard. To the

credit of the Indians it can be said that they killed no more than they

could save the meat from. The greater part of the slaughter was done by

white hunters, or butchers rather, who followed the business of killing

and skinning buffalo by the mouth, leaving the carcasses to rot."

At the time of the great division made by the Union Pacific Railway the

northern body of buffalo extended from the valley of the Platte River

northward to the southern shore of Great Slave Lake, eastward almost to

Minnesota, and westward to an elevation of 8,000 feet in the Rocky

Mountains. The herds were most numerous along the central portion of

this region (see map), and from the Platte Valley to Great Slave Lake

the range was continuous. The buffalo population of the southern half of

this great range was, according to all accounts, nearly three times as

great as that of the northern half. At that time, or, let us say, 1870,

there were about four million buffaloes south of the Platte River, and

probably about one million and a half north of it. I am aware that the

estimate of the number of buffaloes in the great northern herd is

usually much higher than this, but I can see no good grounds for making

it so. To my mind, the evidence is conclusive that, although the

northern herd ranged over such an immense area, it was numerically less

than half the size of the overwhelming multitude which actually crowded

the southern range, and at times so completely consumed the herbage of

the plains that detachments of the United States Army found it difficult

to find sufficient grass for their mules and horses.[67]

[Note 67: As an instance of this, see \_Forest and Stream\_, vol. II,

p. 184: "Horace Jones, the interpreter here [Fort Sill], says that on

his first trip along the line of the one hundredth meridian, in 1859,

accompanying Major Thomas--since our noble old general--they passed

continuous herds for over 60 miles, which left so little grass behind

them that Major Thomas was seriously troubled about his horses."]

The various influences which ultimately led to the complete blotting out

of the great northern herd were exerted about as follows:

In the British Possessions, where the country was immense and game of

all kinds except buffalo very scarce indeed; where, in the language of

Professor Kenaston, the explorer, "there was a great deal of country

around every wild animal," the buffalo constituted the main dependence

of the Indians, who would not cultivate the soil at all, and of the

half-breeds, who would not so long as they could find buffalo. Under

such circumstances the buffaloes of the British Possessions were hunted

much more vigorously and persistently than those of the United States,

where there was such an abundant supply of deer, elk, antelope, and

other game for the Indians to feed upon, and a paternal government to

support them with annuities besides. Quite contrary to the prevailing

idea of the people of the United States, viz., that there were great

herds of buffaloes in existence in the Saskatchewan country long after

ours had all been destroyed, the herds of British America had been

almost totally exterminated by the time the final slaughter of our

northern herd was inaugurated by the opening of the Northern Pacific

Railway in 1880. The Canadian Pacific Railway played no part whatever in

the extermination of the bison in the British Possessions, for it had

already taken place. The half-breeds of Manitoba, the Plains Crees of

Qu'Appelle, and the Blackfeet of the South Saskatchewan country swept

bare a great belt of country stretching east and west between the Rocky

Mountains and Manitoba. The Canadian Pacific Railway found only

bleaching bones in the country through which it passed. The buffalo had

disappeared from that entire region before 1879 and left the Blackfeet

Indians on the verge of starvation. A few thousand buffaloes still

remained in the country around the headwaters of the Battle River,

between the North and South Saskatchewan, but they were surrounded and

attacked from all sides, and their numbers diminished very rapidly until

all were killed.

The latest information I have been able to obtain in regard to the

disappearance of this northern band has been kindly furnished by Prof.

C. A. Kenaston, who in 1881, and also in 1883, made a thorough

exploration of the country between Winnipeg and Fort Edmonton for the

Canadian Pacific Railway Company. His four routes between the two points

named covered a vast scope of country, several hundred miles in width.

In 1881, at Moose Jaw, 75 miles southeast of The Elbow of the South

Saskatchewan, he saw a party of Cree Indians, who had just arrived from

the northwest with several carts laden with fresh buffalo meat. At Fort

Saskatchewan, on the North Saskatchewan River, just above Edmonton, he

saw a party of English sportsmen who had recently been hunting on the

Battle and Red Deer Rivers, between Edmonton and Fort Kalgary, where

they had found buffaloes, and killed as many as they cared to slaughter.

In one afternoon they killed fourteen, and could have killed more had

they been more blood-thirsty. In 1883 Professor Kenaston found the fresh

trail of a band of twenty-five or thirty buffaloes at The Elbow of the

South Saskatchewan. Excepting in the above instances he saw no further

traces of buffalo, nor did he hear of the existence of any in all the

country he explored. In 1881 he saw many Cree Indians at Fort Qu'Appelle

in a starving condition, and there was no pemmican or buffalo meat at

the fort. In 1883, however, a little pemmican found its way to Winnipeg,

where it sold at 15 cents per pound; an exceedingly high price. It had

been made that year, evidently in the mouth of April, as he purchased it

in May for his journey.

The first really alarming impression made on our northern herd was by

the Sioux Indians, who very speedily exterminated that portion of it

which had previously covered the country lying between the North Platte

and a line drawn from the center of Wyoming to the center of Dakota. All

along the Missouri River from Bismarck to Fort Benton, and along the

Yellowstone to the head of navigation, the slaughter went bravely on.

All the Indian tribes of that vast region--Sioux, Cheyennes, Crows,

Blackfeet, Bloods, Piegans, Assinniboines, Gros Ventres, and

Shoshones--found their most profitable business and greatest pleasure

(next to scalping white settlers) in hunting the buffalo. It took from

eight to twelve buffalo hides to make a covering for one ordinary

teepee, and sometimes a single teepee of extra size required from twenty

to twenty-five hides.

The Indians of our northwestern Territories marketed about seventy-five

thousand buffalo robes every year so long as the northern herd was large

enough to afford the supply. If we allow that for every skin sold to

white traders four others were used in supplying their own wants, which

must be considered a very moderate estimate, the total number of

buffaloes slaughtered annually by those tribes must have been about

three hundred and seventy-five thousand.

The end which so many observers had for years been predicting really

began (with the northern herd) in 1876, two years after the great

annihilation which had taken place in the South, although it was not

until four years later that the slaughter became universal over the

entire range. It is very clearly indicated in the figures given in a

letter from Messrs. I. G. Baker & Co., of Fort Benton, Montana, to the

writer, dated October 6, 1887, which reads as follows:

"There were sent East from the year 1876 from this point about

seventy-five thousand buffalo robes. In 1880 it had fallen to about

twenty thousand, in 1883 not more than five thousand, and in 1884 none

whatever. We are sorry we can not give you a better record, but the

collection of hides which exterminated the buffalo was from the

Yellowstone country on the Northern Pacific, instead of northern

Montana."

The beginning of the final slaughter of our northern herd may be dated

about 1880, by which time the annual robe crop of the Indians had

diminished three-fourths, and when summer killing for hairless hides

began on a large scale. The range of this herd was surrounded on three

sides by tribes of Indians, armed with breech-loading rifles and

abundantly supplied with fixed ammunition. Up to the year 1880 the

Indians of the tribes previously mentioned killed probably three times

as many buffaloes as did the white hunters, and had there not been a

white hunter in the whole Northwest the buffalo would have been

exterminated there just as surely, though not so quickly by perhaps ten

years, as actually occurred. Along the north, from the Missouri River to

the British line, and from the reservation in northwestern Dakota to the

main divide of the Rocky Mountains, a distance of 550 miles as the crow

flies, the country was one continuous Indian reservation, inhabited by

eight tribes, who slaughtered buffalo in season and out of season, in

winter for robes and in summer for hides and meat to dry. In the

Southeast was the great body of Sioux, and on the Southwest the Crows

and Northern Cheyennes, all engaged in the same relentless warfare. It

would have required a body of armed men larger than the whole United

States Army to have withstood this continuous hostile pressure without

ultimate annihilation.

Let it be remembered, therefore, that the American Indian is as much

responsible for the extermination of our northern herd of bison as the

American citizen. I have yet to learn of an instance wherein an Indian

refrained from excessive slaughter of game through motives of economy,

or care for the future, or prejudice against wastefulness. From all

accounts the quantity of game killed by an Indian has always been

limited by two conditions only--lack of energy to kill more, or lack of

more game to be killed. White men delight in the chase, and kill for the

"sport" it yields, regardless of the effort involved. Indeed, to a

genuine sportsman, nothing in hunting is "sport" which is not obtained

at the cost of great labor. An Indian does not view the matter in that

light, and when he has killed enough to supply his wants, he stops,

because he sees no reason why he should exert himself any further. This

has given rise to the statement, so often repeated, that the Indian

killed only enough buffaloes to supply his wants. If an Indian ever

attempted, or even showed any inclination, to husband the resources of

nature in any way, and restrain wastefulness on \_the part of Indians\_,

it would be gratifying to know of it.

The building of the Northern Pacific Railway across Dakota and Montana

hastened the end that was fast approaching; but it was only an incident

in the annihilation of the northern herd. Without it the final result

would have been just the same, but the end would probably not have been

reached until about 1888.

The Northern Pacific Railway reached Bismarck, Dakota, on the Missouri

River, in the year 1876, and from that date onward received for

transportation eastward all the buffalo robes and hides that came down

the two rivers, Missouri and Yellowstone.

Unfortunately the Northern Pacific Railway Company kept no separate

account of its buffalo product business, and is unable to furnish a

statement of the number of hides and robes it handled. It is therefore

impossible to even make an estimate of the total number of buffaloes

killed on the northern range during the six years which ended with the

annihilation of that herd.

In regard to the business done by the Northern Pacific Railway, and the

precise points from whence the bulk of the robes were shipped, the

following letter from Mr. J. M. Hannaford, traffic manager of the

Northern Pacific Railroad, under date of September 3, 1887, is of

interest.

"Your communication, addressed to President Harris, has been referred to

me for the information desired.

"I regret that our accounts are not so kept as to enable me to furnish

you accurate data; but I have been able to obtain the following general

information, which may prove of some value to you:

"From the years 1876 and 1880 our line did not extend beyond Bismarck,

which was the extreme easterly shipping point for buffalo robes and

hides, they being brought down the Missouri River from the north for

shipment from that point. In the years 1876, 1877, 1878, and 1879 there

were handled at that point yearly from three to four thousand bales of

robes, about one-half the bales containing ten robes and the other half

twelve robes each. During these years practically no hides were shipped.

In 1880 the shipment of hides, dry and untanned, commenced,[68] and in

1881 and 1882 our line was extended west, and the shipping points

increased, reaching as far west as Terry and Sully Springs, in Montana.

During these years, 1880, 1881, and 1882, which practically finished the

shipments of hides and robes, it is impossible for me to give you any

just idea of the number shipped. The only figures obtainable are those

of 1881, when over seventy-five thousand dry and untanned buffalo hides

came down the river for shipment from Bismarck. Some robes were also

shipped from this point that year, and a considerable number of robes

and hides were shipped from several other shipping points.

[Note 68: It is to be noted that hairless hides, \_taken from buffaloes

killed in summer\_, are what the writer refers to. It was not until 1881,

when the end was very near, that hunting buffalo in summer as well as

winter became a wholesale business. What hunting can be more disgraceful

than the slaughter of females and young \_in summer\_, when skins are

almost worthless.]

"The number of pounds of buffalo meat shipped over our line has never

cut any figure, the bulk of the meat having been left on the prairie, as

not being of sufficient value to pay the cost of transportation.

"The names of the extreme eastern and western stations from which

shipments were made are as follows: In 1880, Bismarck was the only

shipping point. In 1881, Glendive, Bismarck, and Beaver Creek. In 1882,

Terry and Sully Springs, Montana, were the chief shipping points, and in

the order named, so far as numbers and amount of shipments are

concerned. Bismarck on the east and Forsyth on the west were the two

extremities.

"Up to the year 1880, so long as buffalo were killed only for robes, the

bands did not decrease very materially; but beginning with that year,

when they were killed for their hides as well, a most indiscriminate

slaughter commenced, and from that time on they disappeared very

rapidly. Up to the year 1881 there were two large bands, one south of

the Yellowstone and the other north of that river. In the year mentioned

those south of the river were driven north and never returned, having

joined the northern band, and become practically extinguished.

"Since 1882 there have, of course, been occasional shipments both of

hides and robes, but in such small quantities and so seldom that they

cut practically no figure, the bulk of them coming probably from north

Missouri points down the river to Bismarck."

In 1880 the northern buffalo range embraced the following streams; The

Missouri and all its tributaries, from Port Shaw, Montana, to Fort

Bennett, Dakota, and the Yellowstone and all its tributaries. Of this

region, Miles City, Montana, was the geographical center. The grass was

good over the whole of it, and the various divisions of the great herd

were continually shifting from one locality to another, often making

journeys several hundred miles at a time. Over the whole of this vast

area their bleaching bones lie scattered (where they have not as yet

been gathered up for sale) from the Upper Marias and Milk Rivers, near

the British boundary, to the Platte, and from the James River, in

central Dakota, to an elevation of 8,000 feet in the Rocky Mountains.

Indeed, as late as October, 1887, I gathered up on the open common,

within half a mile of the Northern Pacific Railway depot at the city of

Helena, the skull, horns, and numerous odd bones of a large bull buffalo

which had been killed there.

[Illustration: WHERE THE MILLIONS HAVE GONE. From a painting by J. H.

Moser in the National Museum.]

Over many portions of the northern range the traveler may even now ride

for days together without once being out of sight of buffalo

carcasses, or bones. Such was the case in 1886 in the country lying

between the Missouri and the Yellowstone, northwest of Miles City. Go

wherever we might, on divides, into bad lands, creek bottoms, or on the

highest plateaus, we always found the inevitable and omnipresent grim

and ghastly skeleton, with hairy head, dried-up and shriveled nostrils,

half-skinned legs stretched helplessly upon the gray turf, and the bones

of the body bleached white as chalk.

The year 1881 witnessed the same kind of a stampede for the northern

buffalo range that occurred just ten years previously in the south. At

that time robes were worth from two to three times as much as they ever

had been in the south, the market was very active, and the successful

hunter was sure to reap a rich reward as long as the buffaloes lasted.

At that time the hunters and hide-buyers estimated that there were five

hundred thousand buffaloes within a radius of 150 miles of Miles City,

and that there were still in the entire northern herd not far from one

million head. The subsequent slaughter proved that these estimates were

probably not far from the truth. In that year Fort Custer was so nearly

overwhelmed by a passing herd that a detachment of soldiers was ordered

out to turn the herd away from the post. In 1882 an immense herd

appeared on the high, level plateau on the north side of the Yellowstone

which overlooks Miles City and Fort Keogh in the valley below. A squad

of soldiers from the Fifth Infantry was sent up on the bluff, and in

less than an hour had killed enough buffaloes to load six four-mule

teams with meat. In 1886 there were still about twenty bleaching

skeletons lying in a group on the edge of this plateau at the point

where the road from the ferry reaches the level, but all the rest had

been gathered up.

In 1882 there were, so it is estimated by men who were in the country,

no fewer than five thousand white hunters and skinners on the northern

range. Lieut. J. M. T. Partello declares that "a cordon of camps, from

the Upper Missouri, where it bends to the west, stretched toward the

setting sun as far as the dividing line of Idaho, completely blocking in

the great ranges of the Milk River, the Musselshell, Yellowstone, and

the Marias, and rendering it impossible for scarcely a single bison to

escape through the chain of sentinel camps to the Canadian northwest.

Hunters of Nebraska, Wyoming, and Colorado drove the poor hunted animals

north, directly into the muzzles of the thousands of repeaters ready to

receive them. \* \* \* Only a few short years ago, as late as 1883, a herd

of about seventy-five thousand crossed the Yellowstone River a few miles

south of here [Fort Keogh], scores of Indians, pot-hunters, and white

butchers on their heels, bound for the Canadian dominions, where they

hoped to find a haven of safety. Alas! not five thousand of that mighty

mass ever lived to reach the British border line."

It is difficult to say (at least to the satisfaction of old hunters)

which were the most famous hunting grounds on the northern range.

Lieutenant Partello states that when he hunted in the great triangle

bounded by the three rivers, Missouri, Musselshell, and Yellowstone, it

contained, to the best of his knowledge and belief, two hundred and

fifty thousand buffaloes. Unquestionably that region yielded an immense

number of buffalo robes, and since the slaughter \_thousands of tons\_ of

bones have been gathered up there. Another favorite locality was the

country lying between the Powder River and the Little Missouri,

particularly the valleys of Beaver and O'Fallon Creeks. Thither went

scores of "outfits" and hundreds of hunters and skinners from the

Northern Pacific Railway towns from Miles City to Glendive. The hunters

from the towns between Glendive and Bismarck mostly went south to Cedar

Creek and the Grand and Moreau Rivers. But this territory was also the

hunting ground of the Sioux Indians from the great reservation farther

south.

Thousands upon thousands of buffaloes were killed on the Milk and Marias

Rivers, in the Judith Basin, and in northern Wyoming.

The method of slaughter has already been fully described under the head

of "the still-hunt," and need not be recapitulated. It is some

gratification to know that the shocking and criminal wastefulness which

was so marked a feature of the southern butchery was almost wholly

unknown in the north. Robes were worth from $1.50 to $3.50, according to

size and quality, and were removed and preserved with great care. Every

one hundred robes marketed represented not more than one hundred and ten

dead buffaloes, and even this small percentage of loss was due to the

escape of wounded animals which afterward died and were devoured by the

wolves. After the skin was taken off the hunter or skinner stretched it

carefully upon the ground, inside uppermost, cut his initials in the

adherent subcutaneous muscle, and left it until the season for hauling

in the robes, which was always done in the early spring, immediately

following the hunt.

As was the case in the south, it was the ability of a single hunter to

destroy an entire bunch of buffalo in a single day that completely

annihilated the remaining thousands of the northern herd before the

people of the United States even learned what was going on. For example,

one hunter of my acquaintance, Vic. Smith, the most famous hunter in

Montana, killed one hundred and seven buffaloes in one "stand," in about

one hour's time, and without shifting his point of attack. This occurred

in the Red Water country, about 100 miles northeast of Miles City, in

the winter of 1881-'82. During the same season another hunter, named

"Doc." Aughl, killed eighty-five buffaloes at one "stand," and John

Edwards killed seventy-five. The total number that Smith claims to have

killed that season is "about five thousand." Where buffaloes were at all

plentiful, every man who called himself a hunter was expected to kill

between one and two thousand during the hunting season--from November to

February--and when the buffaloes were to be found it was a comparatively

easy thing to do.

During the year 1882 the thousands of bison that still remained alive

on the range indicated above, and also marked out on the accompanying

map, were distributed over that entire area very generally. In February

of that year a Fort Benton correspondent of \_Forest and Stream\_ wrote as

follows: "It is truly wonderful how many buffalo are still left.

Thousands of Indians and hundreds of white men depend on them for a

living. At present nearly all the buffalo in Montana are between Milk

River and Bear Paw Mountains. There are only a few small bands between

the Missouri and the Yellowstone." There were plenty of buffalo on the

Upper Marias River in October, 1882. In November and December there were

thousands between the Missouri and the Yellowstone Rivers. South of the

Northern Pacific Railway the range during the hunting season of 1882-'83

was thus defined by a hunter who has since written out the "Confessions

of a Buffalo Butcher" for \_Forest and Stream\_ (vol. xxiv, p. 489): "Then

[October, 1882] the western limit was defined in a general way by Powder

River, and extending eastward well toward the Missouri and south to

within 60 or 70 miles of the Black Hills. It embraces the valleys of all

tributaries to Powder River from the east, all of the valleys of Beaver

Creek, O'Fallon Creek, and the Little Missouri and Moreau Rivers, and

both forks of the Cannon Ball for almost half their length. This immense

territory, lying almost equally in Montana and Dakota, had been occupied

during the winters by many thousands of buffaloes from time immemorial,

and many of the cows remained during the summer and brought forth their

young undisturbed."

The three hunters composing the party whose record is narrated in the

interesting sketch referred to, went out from Miles City on October 23,

1882, due east to the bad lands between the Powder River and O'Fallon

Creek, and were on the range all winter. They found comparatively few

buffaloes, and secured only two hundred and eighty-six robes, which they

sold at an average price of $2.20 each. They saved and marketed a large

quantity of meat, for which they obtained 3 cents per pound. They found

the whole region in which they hunted fairly infested with Indians and

half-breeds, all hunting buffalo.

The hunting season which began in October, 1882, and ended in February,

1883, finished the annihilation of the great northern herd, and left but

a few small bauds of stragglers, numbering only a very few thousand

individuals all told. A noted event of the season was the retreat

northward across the Yellowstone of the immense herd mentioned by

Lieutenant Partello as containing seventy-five thousand head; others

estimated the number at fifty thousand; and the event is often spoken of

to-day by frontiersmen who were in that region at the time. Many think

that the whole great body went north into British territory, and that

there is still a goodly remnant of it in some remote region between the

Peace River and the Saskatchewan, or somewhere there, which will yet

return to the United States. Nothing could be more illusory than this

belief. In the first place, the herd never reached the British line,

and, if it had, it would have been promptly annihilated by the hungry

Blackfeet and Cree Indians, who were declared to be in a half-starved

condition, through the disappearance of the buffalo, as early as 1879.

The great herd that "went north" was utterly extinguished by the white

hunters along the Missouri River and the Indians living north of it. The

only vestige of it that remained was a band of about two hundred

individuals that took refuge in the labyrinth of ravines and creek

bottoms that lie west of the Musselshell between Flat Willow and Box

Elder Creeks, and another band of about seventy-five which settled in

the bad lands between the head of the Big Dry and Big Porcupine Creeks,

where a few survivors were found by the writer in 1886.

South of the Northern Pacific Railway, a band of about three hundred

settled permanently in and around the Yellowstone National Park, but in

a very short time every animal outside of the protected limits of the

park was killed, and whenever any of the park buffaloes strayed beyond

the boundary they too were promptly killed for their heads and hides. At

present the number remaining in the park is believed by Captain Harris,

the superintendent, to be about two hundred; about one-third of which is

due to breeding in the protected territory.

In the southeast the fate of that portion of the herd is well known. The

herd which at the beginning of the hunting season of 1883 was known to

contain about ten thousand head, and ranged in western Dakota, about

half way between the Black Hills and Bismarck, between the Moreau and

Grand Rivers, was speedily reduced to about one thousand head. Vic.

Smith, who was "in at the death," says there were eleven hundred, others

say twelve hundred. Just at this juncture (October, 1883) Sitting Bull

and his whole band of nearly one thousand braves arrived from the

Standing Sock Agency, and in two days' time slaughtered the entire herd.

Vic. Smith and a host of white hunters took part in the killing of this

last ten thousand, and he declares that "when we got through the hunt

there was not a hoof left. That wound up the buffalo in the Far West,

only a stray bull being seen here and there afterwards."

Curiously enough, not even the buffalo hunters themselves were at the

time aware of the fact that the end of the hunting season of 1882-'83

was also the end of the buffalo, at least as an inhabitant of the plains

and a source of revenue. In the autumn of 1883 they nearly all outfitted

as usual, often at an expense of many hundreds of dollars, and blithely

sought "the range" that had up to that time been so prolific in robes.

The end was in nearly every case the same--total failure and bankruptcy.

It was indeed hard to believe that not only the millions, but also the

thousands, had actually gone, and forever.

I have found it impossible to ascertain definitely the number of robes

and hides shipped from the northern range during the last years of the

slaughter, and the only reliable estimate I have obtained was made for

me, alter much consideration and reflection, by Mr. J. N. Davis, of

Minneapolis, Minnesota. Mr. Davis was for many years a buyer of furs,

robes, and hides on a large scale throughout our Northwestern

Territories, and was actively engaged in buying up buffalo robes as long

as there were any to buy. In reply to a letter asking for statistics, he

wrote me as follows, on September 27, 1887:

"It is impossible to give the exact number of robes and hides shipped

out of Dakota and Montana from 1876 to 1883, or the exact number of

buffalo in the northern herd; but I will give you as correct an account

as any one can. In 1876 it was estimated that there were half a million

buffaloes within a radius of 150 miles of Miles City. In 1881 the

Northern Pacific Railroad was built as far west as Glendive and Miles

City. At that time the whole country was a howling wilderness, and

Indians and wild buffalo were too numerous to mention. The first

shipment of buffalo robes, killed by white men, was made that year, and

the stations on the Northern Pacific Railroad between Miles City and

Mandan sent out about fifty thousand hides and robes. In 1882 the number

of hides and robes bought and shipped was about two hundred thousand,

and in 1883 forty thousand. In 1884 I shipped from Dickinson, Dakota

Territory, the only car load of robes that went East that year, and it

was the last shipment ever made."

For a long time the majority of the ex-hunters cherished the fond

delusion that the great herd had only "gone north" into the British

Possessions, and would eventually return in great force. Scores of

rumors of the finding of herds floated about, all of which were eagerly

believed at first. But after a year or two had gone by without the

appearance of a single buffalo, and likewise without any reliable

information of the existence of a herd of any size, even in British

territory, the butchers of the buffalo either hung up their old Sharps

rifles, or sold them for nothing to the gun-dealers, and sought other

means of livelihood. Some took to gathering up buffalo bones and selling

them by the ton, and others became cowboys.

IV. CONGRESSIONAL LEGISLATION FOR THE PROTECTION OF THE BISON.

The slaughter of the buffalo down to the very point of extermination has

been so very generally condemned, and the general Government has been so

unsparingly blamed for allowing such a massacre to take place on the

public domain, it is important that the public should know all the facts

in the case. To the credit of Congress it must be said that several very

determined efforts were made between the years 1871 and 1876 looking

toward the protection of the buffalo. The failure of all those

well-meant efforts was due to our republican form of Government. Had

this Government been a monarchy the buffalo would have been protected;

but unfortunately in this case (perhaps the only one on record wherein a

king could have accomplished more than the representatives of the

people) the necessary act of Congress was so hedged in and beset by

obstacles that it never became an accomplished fact. Even when both

houses of Congress succeeded in passing a suitable act (June 23, 1874)

it went to the President in the last days of the session only to be

pigeon-holed, and die a natural death.

The following is a complete history of Congressional legislation in

regard to the protection of the buffalo from wanton slaughter and

ultimate extinction. The first step taken in behalf of this persecuted

animal was on March 13, 1871, when Mr. McCormick, of Arizona, introduced

a bill (H. R. 157), which was ordered to be printed. Nothing further was

done with it. It read as follows:

\_Be it enacted, etc.\_, That, excepting for the purpose of using the meat

for food or preserving the akin, it shall be unlawful for any person to

kill the bison, or buffalo, found anywhere upon the public lands of the

United States; and for the violation of this law the offender shall,

upon conviction before any court of competent jurisdiction, be liable to

a fine of $100 for each animal killed, one-half of which sum shall, upon

its collection, be paid to the informer.

On February 14, 1872, Mr. Cole, of California, introduced in the Senate

the following resolution, which was considered by unanimous consent and

agreed to:

\_Resolved\_, That the Committee on Territories be directed to inquire

into the expediency of enacting a law for the protection of the buffalo,

elk, antelope, and other useful animals running wild in the Territories

of the United States against indiscriminate slaughter and extermination,

and that they report by bill or otherwise.

On February 16, 1872, Mr. Wilson, of Massachusetts, introduced a bill in

the Senate (S. 655) restricting the killing of the buffalo upon the

public lauds; which was read twice by its title and referred to the

Committee on Territories.

On April 5, 1872, Mr. B. C. McCormick, of Arizona, made a speech in the

House of Representatives, while it was in Committee of the Whole, on the

restriction of the killing of buffalo.

He mentioned a then recent number of \_Harper's Weekly\_, in which were

illustrations of the slaughter of buffalo, and also read a partly

historical extract in regard to the same. He related how, when he was

once snow-bound upon the Kansas Pacific Railroad, the buffalo furnished

food for himself and fellow-passengers. Then he read the bill introduced

by him March 13, 1871, and also copies of letters furnished him by Henry

Bergh, president of the American Society for the Prevention of Cruelty

to Animals, which were sent to the latter by General W. B. Hazen, Lieut.

Col. A. G. Brackett, and E. W. Wynkoop. He also read a statement by

General Hazen to the effect that he knew of a man who killed ninety-nine

buffaloes with his own hand in one day. He also spoke on the subject of

cross-breeding the buffalo with common cattle, and read an extract in

regard to it from the San Francisco \_Post\_.[69]

[Note 69: Congressional Globe (Appendix), second session Forty-second

Congress.]

On April 6, 1872, Mr. McCormick asked leave to have printed in the

Globe some remarks he had prepared regarding restricting the killing of

buffalo, which was granted.[70]

[Note 70: Congressional Globe, April 6, 1872, Forty-second Congress,

second session.]

On January 5, 1874, Mr. Fort, of Illinois, introduced a bill (H. R. 921)

to prevent the useless slaughter of buffalo within the Territories of

the United States; which was read and referred to the Committee on the

Territories.[71]

[Note 71: Congressional Record, vol. 2, part 1, Forty-third Congress,

p. 371.]

On March 10, 1874, this bill was reported to the House from the

Committee on the Territories, with a recommendation that it be

passed.[72]

[Note 72: Congressional Record, vol. 2, part 3, Forty-third Congress,

first session, pp. 2105, 2109.]

The first section of the bill provided that it shall be unlawful for any

person, who is not an Indian, to kill, wound, or in any way destroy any

female buffalo of any age, found at large within the boundaries of any

of the Territories of the United States.

The second section provided that it shall be, in like manner, unlawful

for any such person to kill, wound, or destroy in said Territories any

greater number of male buffaloes than are needed for food by such

person, or than can be used, cured, or preserved for the food of other

persons, or for the market. It shall in like manner be unlawful for any

such person, or persons, to assist, or be in any manner engaged or

concerned in or about such unlawful killing, wounding, or destroying of

any such buffaloes; that any person who shall violate the provisions of

the act shall, on conviction, forfeit and pay to the United States the

sum of $100 for each offense (and each buffalo so unlawfully killed,

wounded, or destroyed shall be and constitute a separate offense), and

on a conviction of a second offense may be committed to prison for a

period not exceeding thirty days; and that all United States judges,

justices, courts, and legal tribunals in said Territories shall have

jurisdiction in cases of the violation of the law.

Mr. Cox said he had been told by old hunters that it was impossible to

tell the sex of a running buffalo; and he also stated that the bill gave

preference to the Indians.

Mr. Fort said the object was to prevent early extermination; that

thousands were annually slaughtered for skins alone, and thousands for

their tongues alone; that perhaps hundreds of thousands are killed every

year in utter wantonness, with no object for such destruction. He had

been told that the sexes could be distinguished while they were

running.[73]

[Note 73: I know of no greater affront that could be offered to the

intelligence of a genuine buffalo-hunter than to accuse him of not

knowing enough to tell the sex of a buffalo "on the run" by its form

alone.--W. T. H.]

This bill does not prohibit any person joining in a reasonable chase and

hunt of the buffalo.

Said Mr. Fort, "So far as I am advised, gentlemen upon this floor

representing all the Territories are favorable to the passage of this

bill."

Mr. Cox wanted the clause excepting the Indians from the operations of

the bill stricken out, and stated that the Secretary of the Interior had

already said to the House that the civilization of the Indian was

Impossible while the buffalo remained on the plains.

The Clerk read for Mr. McCormick the following extract from the \_New

Mexican\_, a paper published in Santa Fé:

The buffalo slaughter, which has been going on the past few years on the

plains, and which increases every year, is wantonly wicked, and should

be stopped by the most stringent enactments and most vigilant

enforcements of the law. Killing these noble animals for their hides

simply, or to gratify the pleasure of some Russian duke or English lord,

is a species of vandalism which can not too quickly be checked. United

States surveying parties report that there are two thousand hunters on

the plains killing these animals for their hides. One party of sixteen

hunters report having killed twenty-eight thousand buffaloes during the

past summer. It seems to us there is quite as much reason why the

Government should protect the buffaloes as the Indians.

Mr. McCormick considered the subject important, and had not a doubt of

the fearful slaughter. He read the following extract from a letter that

he had received from General Hazen:

I know a man who killed with his own hand ninety-nine buffaloes in one

day, without taking a pound of the meat. The buffalo for food has an

intrinsic value about equal to an average Texas beef, or say $20. There

are probably not less than a million of these animals on the western

plains. If the Government owned a herd of a million oxen they would at

least take steps to prevent this wanton slaughter. The railroads have

made the buffalo so accessible as to present a case not dissimilar.

He agreed with Mr. Cox that some features of the bill would probably be

impracticable, and moved to amend it. He did not believe any bill would

entirely accomplish the purpose, but he desired that such wanton

slaughter should be stopped.

Said he, "It would have been well both for the Indians and the white men

if an enactment of this kind had been placed on our statute-books years

ago. \* \* \* I know of no one act that would gratify the red men more."

Mr. Holman expressed surprise that Mr. Cox should make any objection to

parts of the measure. The former regarded the bill as "an effort in a

most commendable direction," and trusted that it would pass.

Mr. Cox said he would not have objected to the bill but from the fact

that it was partial in its provisions. He wanted a bill that would

impose a penalty on every man, red, white, or black, who may wantonly

kill these buffaloes.

Mr. Potter desired to know whether more buffaloes were slaughtered by

the Indians than by white men.

Mr. Fort thought the white men were doing the greatest amount of

killing.

Mr. Eldridge thought there would be just as much propriety in killing

the fish in our rivers as in destroying the buffalo in order to compel

the Indians to become civilized.

Mr. Conger said: "As a matter of fact, every man knows the range of the

buffalo has grown more and more confined year after year; that they have

been driven westward before advancing civilization." But he opposed the

bill!

Mr. Hawley, of Connecticut, said: "I am glad to see this bill. I am in

favor of this law, and hope it will pass."

Mr. Lowe favored the bill, and thought that the buffalo ought to be

protected for proper utility.

Mr. Cobb thought they ought to be protected for the settlers, who

depended partly on them for food.

Mr. Parker, of Missouri, intimated that the policy of the Secretary of

the Interior was a sound one, and that the buffaloes ought to be

exterminated, to prevent difficulties in civilizing the Indians.

Said Mr. Conger, "I do not think the measure will tend at all to protect

the buffalo."

Mr. McCormick replied: "This bill will not prevent the killing of

buffaloes for any useful purpose, but only their wanton destruction."

Mr. Kasson said: "I wish to say one word in support of this bill,

because I have had some experience as to the manner in which these

buffaloes are treated by hunters. The buffalo is a creature of vast

utility, \* \* \*. This animal ought to be protected; \* \* \*."

The question being taken on the passage of the bill, there were--ayes

132, noes not counted.

So the bill was passed.

On June 23, 1874, this bill (H. R. 921) came up in the Senate.[74]

[Note 74: Congressional Globe, Vol. 2, part 6, Forty-third Congress,

first session.]

Mr. Harvey moved, as an amendment, to strike out the words "who is not

an Indian."

Said Mr. Hitchcock, "That will defeat the bill."

Mr. Frelinghuysen said: "That would prevent the Indians from killing the

buffalo on their own ground. I object to the bill."

Mr. Sargent said: "I think we can pass the bill in the right shape

without objection. Let us take it up. It is a very important one."

Mr. Frelinghuysen withdrew his objection.

Mr. Harvey thought it was a very important bill, and withdrew his

amendment.

The bill was reported to the Senate, ordered to a third reading, read

the third time, and passed. It went to President Grant for signature,

and expired in his hands at the adjournment of that session of Congress.

On February 2, 1874, Mr. Fort introduced a bill (H. R. 1689) to tax

buffalo hides; which was referred to the Committee on Ways and Means.

On June 10, 1874, Mr. Dawes, from the Committee on Ways and Means,

reported back the bill adversely, and moved that it be laid on the

table.

Mr. Fort asked to have the bill referred to the Committee of the

Whole, and it was so referred.

On February 2, 1874, Mr. R. C. McCormick, of Arizona, introduced in the

House a bill (H. R. 1728) restricting the killing of the bison, or

buffalo, on the public lands; which was referred to the Committee on the

Public Lands, and never heard of more.

On January 31, 1876, Mr. Fort introduced a bill (H. R. 1719) to prevent

the useless slaughter of buffaloes within the Territories of the United

States, which was referred to the Committee on the Territories.[75]

[Note 75: Forty-fourth Congress, first session, vol. 4, part 2, pp.

1237-1241.]

The Committee on the Territories reported back the bill without

amendment on February 23, 1876.[76] Its provisions were in every respect

identical with those of the bill introduced by Mr. Fort in 1874, and

which passed both houses.

[Note 76: Forty-fourth Congress first session, vol. 4, part 1, p. 773.]

In support of it Mr. Fort said: "The intention and object of this bill

is to preserve them [the buffaloes] for the use of the Indians, whose

homes are upon the public domain, and to the frontiersmen, who may

properly use them for food. \* \* \* They have been and are now being

slaughtered in large numbers. \* \* \* Thousands of these noble brutes are

annually slaughtered out of mere wontonness. \* \* \* This bill, just as it

is now presented, passed the last Congress. It was not vetoed, but fell,

as I understand, merely for want of time to consider it after having

passed both houses." He also intimated that the Government was using a

great deal of money for cattle to furnish the Indians, while the buffalo

was being wantonly destroyed, whereas they might be turned to their

good.

Mr. Crounse wanted the words "who is not an Indian" struck out, so as to

make the bill general. He thought Indians were to blame for the wanton

destruction.

Mr. Fort thought the amendment unnecessary, and stated that he was

informed that the Indians did not destroy the buffaloes wantonly.

Mr. Dunnell thought the bill one of great importance.

The Clerk read for him a letter from A. G. Brackett, lieutenant-colonel,

Second United States Cavalry, stationed at Omaha Barracks, in which was

a very urgent request to have Congress interfere to prevent the

wholesale slaughter then going on.

Mr. Reagan thought the bill proper and right. He knew from personal

experience how the wanton slaughtering was going on, and also that the

Indians were \_not\_ the ones who did it.

Mr. Townsend, of New York, saw no reason why a white man should not be

allowed to kill a female buffalo as well as an Indian. He said it would

be impracticable to have a separate law for each.

Mr. Maginnis did not agree with him. He thought the bill ought to pass

as it stood.

Mr. Throckmorton thought that while the intention of the bill was a

good one, yet it was mischievous and difficult to enforce, and would

also work hardship to a large portion of our frontier people. He had

several objections. He also thought a cow buffalo could not be

distinguished at a distance.

Mr. Hancock, of Texas, thought the bill an impolicy, and that the sooner

the buffalo was exterminated the better.

Mr. Fort replied by asking him why all the game--deer, antelope,

etc.--was not slaughtered also. Then he went on to state that to

exterminate the buffalo would be to starve innocent children of the red

man, and to make the latter more wild and savage than he was already.

Mr. Baker, of Indiana, offered the following amendment as a substitute

for the one already offered:

\_Provided\_, That any white person who shall employ, hire, or procure,

directly or indirectly, any Indian to kill any buffalo forbidden to be

killed by this act, shall be deemed guilty of a misdemeanor and punished

in the manner provided in this act.

Mr. Fort stated that a certain clause in his bill covered the object of

the amendment.

Mr. Jenks offered the following amendment:

Strike out in the fourth line of the second section the word "can" and

insert "shall;" and in the second line of the same section insert the

word "wantonly" before "kill;" so that the clause will read:

"That it shall be in like manner unlawful for any such person to

wantonly kill, wound, or destroy in the said Territories any greater

number of male buffaloes than are needed for food by such person, or

than shall be used, cured, or preserved for the food of other persons,

or for the market."

Mr. Conger said: "I think the whole bill is unwise. I think it is a

useless measure."

Mr. Hancock said: "I move that the bill and amendment be laid on the

table."

The motion to lay the bill upon the table was defeated, and the

amendment was rejected.

Mr. Conger called for a division on the passage of the bill. The House

divided, and there were--ayes 93, noes 48. He then demanded tellers, and

they reported--ayes 104, noes 36. So the bill was passed.

On February 25, 1876, the bill was reported to the Senate, and referred

to the Committee on Territories, from whence it never returned.

On March 20, 1876, Mr. Fort introduced a bill (H. R. 2767) to tax

buffalo hides; which was referred to the Committee on Ways and Means,

and never heard of afterward.

This was the last move made in Congress in behalf of the buffalo. The

philanthropic friends of the frontiersman, the Indian, and of the

buffalo himself, despaired of accomplishing the worthy object for which

they had so earnestly and persistently labored, and finally gave up the

fight. At the very time the effort in behalf of buffalo protection was

abandoned the northern herd still flourished, and might have been

preserved from extirpation.

At various times the legislatures of a few of the Western States and

Territories enacted laws vaguely and feebly intended to provide some

sort of protection to the fast disappearing animals. One of the first

was the game law of Colorado, passed in 1872, which declared that the

killers of game should not leave any flesh to spoil. The western game

laws of those days amounted to about as much as they do now; practically

nothing at all. I have never been able to learn of a single instance,

save in the Yellowstone Park, wherein a western hunter was prevented by

so simple and innocuous a thing as a game law from killing game. Laws

were enacted, but they were always left to enforce themselves. The idea

of the frontiersman (the average, at least) has always been to kill as

much game as possible before some other fellow gets a chance at it, \_and

before it is all killed off\_! So he goes at the game, and as a general

thing kills all he can while it lasts, and with it feeds himself and

family, his dogs, and even his hogs, to repletion. I knew one Montana

man north of Miles City who killed for his own use twenty-six black-tail

deer in one season, and had so much more venison than he could consume

or give away that a great pile of carcasses lay in his yard until spring

and spoiled.

During the existence of the buffalo it was declared by many an

impossibility to stop or prevent the slaughter. Such an accusation of

weakness and imbecility on the part of the General Government is an

insult to our strength and resources. The protection of game is now and

always has been simply a question of money. A proper code of game laws

and a reasonable number of salaried game-wardens, sworn to enforce them

and punish all offenses against them, would have afforded the buffalo as

much protection as would have been necessary to his continual existence.

To be sure, many buffaloes would have been killed on the sly in spite of

laws to the contrary, but it was wholesale slaughter that wrought the

extermination, and that could easily have been prevented. A tax of 50

cents each on buffalo robes would have maintained a sufficient number of

game-wardens to have reasonably regulated the killing, and maintained

for an indefinite period a bountiful source of supply of food, and also

raiment for both the white man of the plains and the Indian. By

judicious management the buffalo could have been made to yield an annual

revenue equal to that we now receive from the fur-seals--$100,000 per

year.

During the two great periods of slaughter--1870-'75 and 1880-'84--the

principal killing grounds were as well known as the stock-yards of

Chicago. Had proper laws been enacted, and had either the general or

territorial governments entered with determination upon the task of

restricting the killing of buffaloes to proper limits, their enforcement

would have been, in the main, as simple and easy as the collection of

taxes. Of course the solitary hunter in a remote locality would have

bowled over his half dozen buffaloes in secure defiance of the law; but

such desultory killing could not have made much impression on the great

mass for many years. The business-like, wholesale slaughter, wherein

one hunter would openly kill five thousand buffaloes and market perhaps

two thousand hides, could easily have been stopped forever. Buffalo

hides could not have been dealt in clandestinely, for many reasons, and

had there been no sale for ill-gotten spoils the still-hunter would have

gathered no spoils to sell. It was an undertaking of considerable

magnitude, and involving a cash outlay of several hundred dollars to

make up an "outfit" of wagons, horses, arms and ammunition, food, etc.,

for a trip to "the range" after buffaloes. It was these wholesale

hunters, both in the North and the South, who exterminated the species,

and to say that all such undertakings could not have been effectually

prevented by law is to accuse our law-makers and law-officers of

imbecility to a degree hitherto unknown. There is nowhere in this

country, nor in any of the waters adjacent to it, a living species of

any kind which the United States Government can not fully and

perpetually protect from destruction by human agencies if it chooses to

do so. The destruction of the buffalo was a loss of wealth perhaps

twenty times greater than the sum it would have cost to conserve it, and

this stupendous waste of valuable food and other products was committed

by one class of the American people and permitted by another with a

prodigality and wastefulness which even in the lowest savages would be

inexcusable.

V. COMPLETENESS OF THE EXTERMINATION.

(May 1, 1889.)

Although the existence of a few widely-scattered individuals enables us

to say that the bison is not yet absolutely extinct in a wild state,

there is no reason to hope that a single wild and unprotected individual

will remain alive ten years hence. The nearer the species approaches to

complete extermination, the more eagerly are the wretched fugitives

pursued to the death whenever found. Western hunters are striving for

the honor (?) of killing the last buffalo, which, it is to be noted, has

already been slain about a score of times by that number of hunters.

The buffaloes still alive in a wild state are so very few, and have been

so carefully "marked down" by hunters, it is possible to make a very

close estimate of the total number remaining. In this enumeration the

small herd in the Yellowstone National Park is classed with other herds

in captivity and under protection, for the reason that, had it not been

for the protection afforded by the law and the officers of the Park, not

one of these buffaloes would be living to-day. Were the restrictions of

the law removed now, every one of those animals would be killed within

three months. Their heads alone are worth from $25 to $50 each to

taxidermists, and for this reason every buffalo is a prize worth the

hunter's winning. Had it not been for stringent laws, and a rigid

enforcement of them by Captain Harris, the last of the Park buffaloes

would have been shot years ago by Vic. Smith, the Rea Brothers, and

other hunters, of whom there is always an able contingent around the

Park.

In the United States the death of a buffalo is now such an event that it

is immediately chronicled by the Associated Press and telegraphed all

over the country. By reason of this, and from information already in

hand, we are able to arrive at a very fair understanding of the present

condition of the species in a wild state.

In December, 1886, the Smithsonian expedition left about fifteen

buffaloes alive in the bad lands of the Missouri-Yellowstone divide, at

the head of Big Porcupine Creek. In 1887 three of these were killed by

cowboys, and in 1888 two more, the last death recorded being that of an

old bull killed near Billings. There are probably eight or ten

stragglers still remaining in that region, hiding in the wildest and

most broken tracts of the bad lands, as far as possible from the cattle

ranches, and where even cowboys seldom go save on a round-up. From the

fact that no other buffaloes, at least so far as can be learned, have

been killed in Montana during the last two years, I am convinced that

the bunch referred to are the last representatives of the species

remaining in Montana.

In the spring of 1886 Mr. B. C. Winston, while on a hunting trip about

75 miles west of Grand Rapids, Dakota, saw seven buffaloes--five adult

animals and two calves; of which he killed one, a large bull, and caught

a calf alive. On September 11, 1888, a solitary bull was killed 3 miles

from the town of Oakes, in Dickey County. There are still three

individuals in the unsettled country lying between that point and the

Missouri, which are undoubtedly the only wild representatives of the

race east of the Missouri River.

On April 28, 1887, Dr. William Stephenson, of the United States Army,

wrote me as follows from Pilot Butte, about 30 miles north of Rock

Springs, Wyoming:

"There are undoubtedly buffalo within 50 or 60 miles of here, two having

been killed out of a band of eighteen some ten days since by cowboys,

and another band of four seen near there. I hear from cattlemen of their

being seen every year north and northeast of here."

This band was seen once in 1888. In February, 1889, Hon. Joseph M.

Carey, member of Congress from Wyoming, received a letter informing him

that this band of buffaloes, consisting of twenty-six head, had been

seen grazing in the Red Desert of Wyoming, and that the Indians were

preparing to attack it. At Judge Carey's request the Indian Bureau

issued orders which it was hoped would prevent the slaughter. So, until

further developments, we have the pleasure of recording the presence of

twenty-six wild buffaloes in southern Wyoming.

There are no buffaloes whatever in the vicinity of the Yellowstone Park,

either in Wyoming, Montana, or Idaho, save what wander out of that

reservation, and when any do, they are speedily killed.

There is a rumor that there are ten or twelve mountain buffaloes still

on foot in Colorado, in a region called Lost Park, and, while it lacks

confirmation, we gladly accept it as a fact. In 1888 Mr. C. B. Cory, of

Boston, saw in Denver, Colorado, eight fresh buffalo skins, which it was

said had come from the region named above. In 1885 there was a herd of

about forty "mountain buffalo" near South Park, and although some of the

number may still survive, the indications are that the total number of

wild buffaloes in Colorado does not exceed twenty individuals.

In Texas a miserable remnant of the great southern herd still remains in

the "Pan-handle country," between the two forks of the Canadian River.

In 1886 about two hundred head survived, which number by the summer of

1887 had been reduced to one hundred, or less. In the hunting season of

1887-'88 a ranchman named Lee Howard fitted out and led a strong party

into the haunts of the survivors, and killed fifty-two of them. In May,

1888, Mr. C. J. Jones again visited this region for the purpose of

capturing buffaloes alive. His party found, from first to last,

thirty-seven buffaloes, of which they captured eighteen head, eleven

adult cows and seven calves; the greatest feat ever accomplished in

buffalo-hunting. It is highly probable that Mr. Jones and his men saw

about all the buffaloes now living in the Pan-handle country, and it

therefore seems quite certain that not over twenty-five individuals

remain. These are so few, so remote, and so difficult to reach, it is to

be hoped no one will consider them worth going after, and that they will

be left to take care of themselves. It is greatly to be regretted that

the State of Texas does not feel disposed to make a special effort for

their protection and preservation.

In regard to the existence of wild buffaloes in the British Possessions,

the statements of different authorities are at variance, by far the

larger number holding the opinion that there are in all the Northwest

Territory only a few almost solitary stragglers. But there is still good

reason for the hope, and also the belief, that there still remain in

Athabasca, between the Athabasca and Peace Rivers, at least a few

hundred "wood buffalo." In a very interesting and well-considered

article in the London \_Field\_ of November 10, 1888, Mr. Miller Christy

quotes all the available positive evidence bearing on this point, and I

gladly avail myself of the opportunity to reproduce it here:

"The Hon. Dr. Schulz, in the recent debate on the Mackenzie River basin,

in the Canadian senate, quoted Senator Hardisty, of Edmonton, of the

Hudson's Bay Company, to the effect that the wood buffalo still existed

in the region in question. 'It was,' he said, 'difficult to estimate how

many; but probably five or six hundred still remain in scattered bands.'

There had been no appreciable difference in their numbers, he thought,

during the last fifteen years, as they could not be hunted on horseback,

on account of the wooded character of the country, and were, therefore,

very little molested. They are larger than the buffalo of the great

plains, weighing at least 150 pounds more. They are also coarser haired

and straighter horned.

"The doctor also quoted Mr. Frank Oliver, of Edmonton, to the effect

that the wood buffalo still exists in small numbers between the Lower

Peace and Great Slave Rivers, extending westward from the latter to the

Salt River in latitude 60 degrees, and also between the Peace and

Athabasca Rivers. He states that 'they are larger than the prairie

buffalo, and the fur is darker, but practically they are the same

animal.' ...Some buffalo meat is brought in every winter to the Hudson's

Bay Company's posts nearest the buffalo ranges.

"Dr. Schulz further stated that he had received the following testimony

from Mr. Donald Ross, of Edmonton: The wood buffalo still exists in the

localities named. About 1870 one was killed as far west on Peace River

as Port Dunvegan. They are quite different from the prairie buffalo,

being nearly double the size, as they will dress fully 700 pounds."

It will be apparent to most observers, I think, that Mr. Ross's

statement in regard to the size of the wood buffalo is a random shot.

In a private letter to the writer, under date of October 22, 1887, Mr.

Harrison S. Young, of the Hudson's Bay Company's post at Edmonton,

writes as follows:

"The buffalo are not yet extinct in the Northwest. There are still some

stray ones on the prairies away to the south of this, but they must be

very few. I am unable to find any one who has personal knowledge of the

killing of one during the last two years, though I have since the

receipt of your letter questioned a good many half-breeds on the

subject. In our district of Athabasca, along the Salt River, there are

still a few wood buffalo killed every year, but they are fast

diminishing in numbers and are also becoming very shy."

In his "Manitoba and the Great Northwest" Prof. John Macoun has this to

say regarding the presence of the wood buffalo in the region referred

to:

"The wood buffalo, when I was on the Peace River in 1875, were confined

to the country lying between the Athabasca and Peace Rivers north of

latitude 57° 30', or chiefly in the Birch Hills. They were also said to

be in some abundance on the Salt and Hay Rivers, running into the Save

River north of Peace River. The herds thirteen years ago [now nineteen]

were supposed to number about one thousand, all told. I believe many

still exist, as the Indians of that region eat fish, which are much

easier procured than either buffalo or moose, and the country is much

too difficult for white men."

All this evidence, when carefully considered, resolves itself into

simply this and no more: The only evidence in favor of the existence of

any live buffaloes between the Athabasca and Peace Rivers is in the form

of very old rumors, most of them nearly fifteen years old; time enough

for the Indians to have procured fire-arms in abundance and killed all

those buffaloes two or three times over.

Mr. Miller Christy takes "the mean of the estimates," and assumes that

there are now about five hundred and fifty buffaloes in the region

named. If we are to believe in the existence there of any stragglers his

estimate is a fair one, and we will gladly accept it. The total is

therefore as follows:

+-------------------------------------------------+

| \_Number of American bison running wild |

| and unprotected on January 1, 1889.\_ |

+-------------------------------------------------+

|In the Pan-handle of Texas | 25|

|In Colorado | 20|

|In southern Wyoming | 26|

|In the Musselshell country, Montana | 10|

|In western Dakota | 4|

| |---|

| Total number in the United States | 85|

|In Athabasca, Northwest Territory (estimated)|550|

| |---|

| Total in all North America |635|

+-------------------------------------------------+

Add to the above the total number already recorded in captivity (256)

and those under Government protection in the Yellowstone Park (200), and

the whole number of individuals of \_Bison americanus\_ now living is

1,091.

From this time it is probable that many rumors of the sudden appearance

of herds of buffaloes will become current. Already there have been three

or four that almost deserve special mention. The first appeared in

March, 1887, when various Western newspapers published a circumstantial

account of how a herd of about three hundred buffaloes swam the Missouri

River about 10 miles above Bismarck, near the town of Painted Woods, and

ran on in a southwesterly direction. A letter of inquiry, addressed to

Mr. S. A. Peterson, postmaster at Painted Woods, elicited the following

reply:

"The whole rumor is false, and without any foundation. I saw it first in

the ---- newspaper, where I believe it originated."

In these days of railroads and numberless hunting parties, there is not

the remotest possibility of there being anywhere in the United States a

herd of a hundred, or even fifty, buffaloes which has escaped

observation. Of the eighty-five head still existing in a wild state it

may safely be predicted that not even one will remain alive five years

hence. A buffalo is now so great a prize, and by the ignorant it is

considered so great an honor(!) to kill one, that extraordinary

exertions will be made to find and shoot down without mercy the "last

buffalo."

There is no possible chance for the race to be perpetuated in a wild

state, and in a few years more hardly a bone will remain above ground to

mark the existence of the must prolific mammalian species that ever

existed, so far as we know.

VI. EFFECTS OF THE EXTERMINATION.

The buffalo supplied the Indian with food, clothing, shelter, bedding,

saddles, ropes, shields, and innumerable smaller articles of use and

ornament In the United States a paternal government takes the place of

the buffalo in supplying all these wants of the red man, and it costs

several millions of dollars annually to accomplish the task.

The following are the tribes which depended very largely--some almost

wholly--upon the buffalo for the necessities, and many of the luxuries,

of their savage life until the Government began to support them:

+------------------------------------+

|Sioux |30,561|

|Crow | 3,226|

|Piegan, Blood, and Blackfeet | 2,026|

|Cheyenne | 3,477|

|Gros Ventres | 856|

|Arickaree | 517|

|Mandan | 283|

|Bannack and Shoshone | 2,001|

|Nez Percé | 1,460|

|Assinniboine | 1,688|

|Kiowas and Comanches | 2,756|

|Arapahoes | 1,217|

|Apache | 332|

|Ute | 978|

|Omaha | 1,160|

|Pawnee | 998|

|Winnebago | 1,222|

| |------|

| Total |54,758|

+------------------------------------+

This enumeration (from the census of 1886) leaves entirely out of

consideration many thousands of Indians living in the Indian Territory

and other portions of the Southwest, who drew an annual supply of meat

and robes from the chase of the buffalo, notwithstanding the fact that

their chief dependence was upon agriculture.

The Indians of what was once the buffalo country are not starving and

freezing, for the reason that the United States Government supplies them

regularly with beef and blankets in lieu of buffalo. Does any one

imagine that the Government could not have regulated the killing of

buffaloes, and thus maintained the supply, for far less money than it

now costs to feed and clothe those 54,758 Indians!

How is it with the Indians of the British Possessions to-day?

Prof. John Maconn writes as follows in his "Manitoba and the Great

Northwest," page 342:

"During the last three years [prior to 1883] the great herds have been

kept south of our boundary, and, as the result of this, our Indians have

been on the verge of starvation. When the hills were covered with

countless thousands [of buffaloes] in 1877, the Blackfeet were dying of

starvation in 1879."

During the winter of 1886-'87, destitution and actual starvation

prevailed to an alarming extent among certain tribes of Indians in the

Northwest Territory who once lived bountifully on the buffalo. A

terrible tale of suffering in the Athabasca and Peace River country has

recently (1888) come to the minister of the interior of the Canadian

government, in the form of a petition signed by the bishop of that

diocese, six clergymen and missionaries, and several justices of the

peace. It sets forth that "owing to the destruction of game, the

Indians, both last winter and last summer, have been in a state of

starvation. They are now in a complete state of destitution, and are

utterly unable to provide themselves with clothing, shelter, ammunition,

or food for the coming winter." The petition declares that on account of

starvation, and consequent cannibalism, a party of twenty-nine Cree

Indians was reduced to three in the winter of 1886.[77] Of the Fort

Chippewyan Indians, between twenty and thirty starved to death last

winter, and the death of many more was hastened by want of food and by

famine diseases. Many other Indians--Crees, Beavers, and Chippewyans--at

almost all points where there are missions or trading posts, would

certainly have starved to death but for the help given them by the

traders and missionaries at those places. It is now declared by the

signers of the memorial that scores of families, having lost their heads

by starvation, are now perfectly helpless, and during the coming winter

must either starve to death or eat one another unless help comes.

Heart-rending stories of suffering and cannibalism continue to come in

from what was once the buffalo plains.

[Note 77: It was the Cree Indians who used to practice impounding

buffaloes, slaughtering a penful of two hundred head at a time with most

fiendish glee, and leaving all but the very choicest of the meat to

putrefy.]

If ever thoughtless people were punished for their reckless

improvidence, the Indians and half-breeds of the Northwest Territory are

now paying the penalty for the wasteful slaughter of the buffalo a few

short years ago. The buffalo is his own avenger, to an extent his

remorseless slayers little dreamed he ever could be.

VII. PRESERVATION OF THE SPECIES FROM ABSOLUTE EXTINCTION.

There is reason to fear that unless the United States Government takes

the matter in hand and makes a special effort to prevent it, the

pure-blood bison will be lost irretrievably through mixture with

domestic breeds and through in-and-in breeding.

The fate of the Yellowstone Park herd is, to say the least, highly

uncertain. A distinguished Senator, who is deeply interested in

legislation for the protection of the National Park reservation, has

declared that the pressure from railway corporations, which are seeking

a foot-hold in the park, has become so great and so aggressive that he

fears the park will "eventually be broken up." In any such event, the

destruction of the herd of park buffaloes would be one of the very first

results. If the park is properly maintained, however, it is to be hoped

that the buffaloes now in it will remain there and increase

indefinitely.

As yet there are only two captive buffaloes in the possession of the

Government, viz, those in the Department of Living Animals of the

National Museum, presented by Hon. E. G. Blackford, of New York. The

buffaloes now in the Zoological Gardens of the country are but few in

number, and unless special pains be taken to prevent it, by means of

judicious exchanges, from time to time, these will rapidly deteriorate

in size, and within a comparatively short time run out entirely, through

continued in-and-in breeding. It is said that even the wild aurochs in

the forests of Lithuania are decreasing in size and, in number from this

cause.

With private owners of captive buffaloes, the temptations to produce

cross-breeds will be so great that it is more than likely the breeding

of pure-blood buffaloes will be neglected. Indeed, unless some stockman

like Mr. C. J. Jones takes particular pains to protect his full blood

buffaloes, and keep the breed absolutely pure, in twenty years there

will not be a pure-blood animal of that species on any stock farm in

this country. Under existing conditions, the constant tendency of the

numerous domestic forms is to absorb and utterly obliterate the few wild

ones.

If we may judge from the examples set as by European governments, it is

clearly the duty of our Government to act in this matter, and act

promptly, with a degree of liberality and promptness which can not be

otherwise than highly gratifying to every American citizen and every

friend of science throughout the world. The Fiftieth Congress, at its

last session, responded to the call made upon it, and voted $200,000 for

the establishment of a National Zoological Park in the District of

Columbia on a grand scale. One of the leading purposes it is destined to

serve is the preservation and breeding in comfortable, and so far as

space is concerned, luxurious captivity of a number of fine specimens of

every species of American quadruped now threatened with

extermination.[78]

[Note 78: It is indeed an unbounded satisfaction to be able to now

record the fact that this important task, in which every American

citizen has a personal interest, is actually to be undertaken. Last year

we could only way it ought to be undertaken. In its accomplishment, the

Government expects the co-operation of private individuals all over the

country in the form of gifts of desirable living animals, for no

government could afford to purchase all the animals necessary for a

great Zoological Garden, provide for their wants in a liberal way, and

yet give the public free access to the collection, as is to be given to

the National Zoological Park.]

At least eight or ten buffaloes of pure breed should be secured very

soon by the Zoological Park Commission, by gift if possible, and cared

for with special reference to keeping the breed absolutely pure, and

\_keeping the herd from deteriorating and dying out through in-and-in

breeding\_.

The total expense would be trifling in comparison with the importance of

the end to be gained, and in that way we might, in a small measure,

atone for our neglect of the means which would have protected the great

herds from extinction. In this way, by proper management, it will be not

only possible but easy to preserve fine living representatives of this

important species for centuries to come.

The result of continuing in-breeding is certain extinction. Its progress

may be so slow as to make no impression upon the mind of a herd-owner,

but the end is only a question of time. The fate of a majority of the

herds of British wild cattle (\_Bos urus\_) warn us what to expect with

the American bison under similar circumstances. Of the fourteen herds of

wild cattle which were in existence in England and Scotland during the

early part of the present century, direct descendants of the wild herds

found in Great Britain, nine have become totally extinct through in

breeding.

The five herds remaining are those at Somerford Park, Blickling Hall,

Woodbastwick, Chartley, and Chillingham.

PART III.--THE SMITHSONIAN EXPEDITION FOR MUSEUM SPECIMENS.

I. THE EXPLORATION.

During the first three months of the year 1886 it was ascertained by the

writer, then chief taxidermist of the National Museum, that the

extermination of the American bison had made most alarming progress. By

extensive correspondence it was learned that the destruction of all the

large herds, both North and South, was already an accomplished fact.

While it was generally supposed that at least a few thousand individuals

still inhabited the more remote and inaccessible regions of what once

constituted the great northern buffalo range, it was found that the

actual number remaining in the whole United States was probably less

than three hundred.

By some authorities who were consulted it was considered an

impossibility to procure a large series of specimens anywhere in this

country, while others asserted positively that there were no wild

buffaloes south of the British possessions save those in the Yellowstone

National Park. Canadian authorities asserted with equal positiveness

that none remained in their territory.

A careful inventory of the specimens in the collection of the National

Museum revealed the fact that, with the exception of one mounted female

skin, another unmounted, and one mounted skeleton of a male buffalo, the

Museum was actually without presentable specimens of this most important

and interesting mammal.

Besides those mentioned above, the collection contained only two old,

badly mounted, and dilapidated skins, (one of which had been taken in

summer, and therefore was not representative), an incomplete skeleton,

some fragmentary skulls of no value, and two mounted heads. Thus it

appeared that the Museum was unable to show a series of specimens, good

or bad, or even one presentable male of good size.

In view of this alarming state of affairs, coupled with the already

declared extinction of \_Bison americanus\_, the Secretary of the

Smithsonian Institution, Prof. Spencer F. Baird, determined to send a

party into the field at once to find wild buffalo, if any were still

living, and in case any were found to collect a number of specimens.

Since it seemed highly uncertain whether any other institution, or any

private individual, would have the opportunity to collect a large supply

of specimens before it became too late, it was decided by the Secretary

that the Smithsonian Institution should undertake the task of providing

for the future as liberally as possible. For the benefit of the smaller

scientific museums of the country, and for others which will come into

existence during the next half century, it was resolved to collect at

all hazards, in case buffalo could be found, between eighty and one

hundred specimens of various kinds, of which from twenty to thirty

should be skins, an equal number should be complete skeletons, and of

skulls at least fifty.

In view of the great scarcity of buffalo and the general belief that it

might be a work of some months to find any specimens, even if it were

possible to find any at all, it was determined not to risk the success

of the undertaking by delaying it until the regular autumn hunting

season, but to send a party into the field at once to prosecute a

search. It was resolved to discover at all hazards the whereabouts of

any buffalo that might still remain in this country in a wild state,

and, if possible, to reach them before the shedding of their winter

pelage. It very soon became apparent, however, that the latter would

prove an utter impossibility.

Late in the month of April a letter was received from Dr. J. C. Merrill,

United States Army, dated at Huntley, Montana, giving information of

reports that buffalo were still to be found in three localities in the

Northwest, viz: on the headwaters of the Powder River, Wyoming; in

Judith Basin, Montana; and on Big Dry Creek, also in Montana. The

reports in regard to the first two localities proved to be erroneous. It

was ascertained to a reasonable certainty that there still existed in

southwestern Dakota a small band of six or eight wild buffaloes, while

from the Pan-handle of Texas there came reports of the existence there,

in small scattered hands, of about two hundred head. The buffalo known

to be in Dakota were far too few in number to justify a long and

expensive search, while those in Texas, on the Canadian River, were too

difficult to reach to make it advisable to hunt them save as a last

resort. It was therefore decided to investigate the localities named in

the Northwest.

Through the courtesy of the Secretary of War, an order was sent to the

officer commanding the Department of Dakota, requesting him to furnish

the party, through the officers in command at Forts Keogh, Maginnis, and

McKinney, such field transportation, escort, and camp equipage as might

be necessary, and also to sell to the party such commissary stores as

might be required, at cost price, plus 10 per cent. The Secretary of the

Interior also favored the party with an order, directing all Indian

agents, scouts, and others in the service of the Department to render

assistance as far as possible when called upon.

In view of the public interest attaching to the results of the

expedition, the railway transportation of the party to and from Montana

was furnished entirely without cost to the Smithsonian Institution. For

these valuable courtesies we gratefully acknowledge our obligations to

Mr. Frank Thomson, of the Pennsylvania Railroad; Mr. Roswell Miller, of

the Chicago, Milwaukee and St. Paul; and Mr. Robert Harris, of the

Northern Pacific.

Under orders from the Secretary of the Smithsonian Institution, the

writer left Washington on May 6, accompanied by A. H. Forney, assistant

in the department of taxidermy, and George H. Hedley, of Medina, New

York. It had been decided that Miles City, Montana, might properly be

taken as the first objective point, and that town was reached on May 9.

Diligent inquiry in Miles City and at Fort Keogh, 2 miles distant,

revealed the fact that no one knew of the presence of any wild buffalo

anywhere in the Northwest, save within the protected limits of the

Yellowstone Park. All inquiries elicited the same reply: "There are no

buffalo any more, and you can't get any anywhere." Many persons who were

considered good authority declared most positively that there was not a

live buffalo in the vicinity of Big Dry Creek, nor anywhere between the

Yellowstone and Missouri Rivers. An army officer from Fort Maginnis

testified to the total absence of buffalo in the Judith Basin, and

ranchmen from Wyoming asserted that none remained in the Powder River

country.

Just at this time it was again reported to us, and most opportunely

confirmed by Mr. Henry E. Phillips, owner of the =LU=-bar ranch on

Little Dry Creek, that there still remained a chance to find a few

buffalo in the country lying south of the Big Dry. On the other hand,

other persons who seemed to be fully informed regarding that very region

and the animal life it contained, assured us that not a single buffalo

remained there, and that a search in that direction would prove

fruitless. But the balance of evidence, however, seemed to lie in favor

of the Big Dry country, and we resolved to hunt through it with all

possible dispatch.

On the afternoon of May 13 we crossed the Yellowstone and started

northwest up the trail which leads along Sunday Creek. Our entire party

consisted of the two assistants already mentioned, a non-commissioned

officer, Sergeant Garone, and four men from the Fifth Infantry acting as

escort; Private Jones, also from the Fifth Infantry, detailed to act as

our cook, and a teamster. Our conveyance consisted of a six-mule team,

which, like the escort, was ordered out for twenty days only, and

provided accordingly. Before leaving Miles City we purchased two

saddle-horses for use in hunting, the equipments for which were

furnished by the ordnance department at Fort Keogh.

During the first two days' travel through the bad lands north of the

Yellowstone no mammals were seen save prairie-dogs and rabbits. On the

third day a few antelope were seen, but none killed. It is to be borne

in mind that this entire region is absolutely treeless everywhere save

along the margins of the largest streams. Bushes are also entirely

absent, with the exception of sage-brush, and even that does not occur

to any extent on the divides.

On the third day two young buck antelopes were shot at the Red Buttes.

One had already commenced to shed his hair, but the other had not quite

reached that point. We prepared the skin of the first specimen and the

skeleton of the other. This was the only good antelope skin we obtained

in the spring, those of all the other specimens taken being quite

worthless on account of the looseness of the hair. During the latter

part of May, and from that time on until the long winter hair is

completely shed, it falls off in handfuls at the slightest pressure,

leaving the skin clad only with a thin growth of new, mouse-colored hair

an eighth of an inch long.

After reaching Little Dry Creek and hunting through the country on the

west side of it nearly to its confluence with the Big Dry we turned

southwest, and finally went into permanent camp on Phillips Creek, 8

miles above the =LU=-bar ranch and 4 miles from the Little Dry. At that

point we were about 80 miles from Miles City.

From information furnished us by Mr. Phillips and the cowboys in his

employ, we were assured that about thirty-five head of buffalo ranged in

the bad lands between Phillips Creek and the Musselshell River and south

of the Big Dry. This tract of country was about 40 miles long from east

to west by 25 miles wide, and therefore of about 1,000 square miles in

area. Excepting two temporary cowboy camps it was totally uninhabited by

man, treeless, without any running streams, save in winter and spring,

and was mostly very hilly and broken.

In this desolate and inhospitable country the thirty-five buffaloes

alluded to had been seen, first on Sand Creek, then at the head of the

Big Porcupine, again near the Musselshell, and latest near the head of

the Little Dry. As these points were all from 15 to 30 miles distant

from each other, the difficulty of finding such a small herd becomes

apparent.

Although Phillips Creek was really the eastern boundary of the buffalo

country, it was impossible for a six-mule wagon to proceed beyond it, at

least at that point. Having established a permanent camp, the Government

wagon and its escort returned to Fort Keogh, and we proceeded to hunt

through the country between Sand Creek and the Little Dry. The absence

of nearly all the cowboys on the spring round-up, which began May 20,

threatened to be a serious drawback to us, as we greatly needed the

services of a man who was acquainted with the country. We had with us as

a scout and guide a Cheyenne Indian, named Dog, but it soon became

apparent that he knew no more about the country than we did.

Fortunately, however, we succeeded in occasionally securing the services

of a cowboy, which was of great advantage to us.

It was our custom to ride over the country daily, each day making a

circuit through a new locality, and covering as much ground as it was

possible to ride over in a day. It was also our custom to take trips of

from two to four days in length, during which we carried our blankets

and rations upon our horses and camped wherever night overtook us,

provided water could be found.

Our first success consisted in the capture of a buffalo calf, which from

excessive running had become unable to keep up with its mother, and had

been left behind. The calf was caught alive without any difficulty, and

while two of the members of our party carried it to camp across a horse,

the other two made a vigorous effort to discover the band of adult

animals. The effort was unsuccessful, for, besides the calf, no other

buffaloes were seen.

Ten days after the above event two bull buffaloes were met with on the

Little Dry, 15 miles above the =LU=-bar ranch, one of which was

overtaken and killed, but the other got safely away. The shedding of the

winter coat was in full progress. On the head, neck, and shoulders the

old hair had been entirely replaced by the new, although the two coats

were so matted together that the old hair clung in tangled masses to the

other. The old hair was brown and weather-beaten, but the new, which was

from 3 to 6 inches long, had a peculiar bluish-gray appearance. On the

head the new hair was quite black, and contrasted oddly with the lighter

color. On the body and hind quarters there were large patches of skin

which were perfectly bare, between which lay large patches of old,

woolly, brown hair. This curious condition gave the animal a very

unkempt and "seedy" appearance, the effect of which was heightened by

the long, shaggy locks of old, weather beaten hair which clung to the

new coat of the neck and shoulders like tattered signals of distress,

ready to be blown away by the first gust of wind.

This specimen was a large one, measuring 5 feet 4 inches in height.

Inasmuch as the skin was not in condition to mount, we took only the

skeleton, entire, and the skin of the head and neck.

The capture of the calf and the death of this bull proved conclusively

that there were buffaloes in that region, and also that they were

breeding in comparative security. The extent of the country they had to

range over made it reasonably certain that their number would not be

diminished to any serious extent by the cowboys on the spring round-up,

although it was absolutely certain that in a few months the members of

that band would all be killed. The report of the existence of a herd of

thirty-five head was confirmed later by cowboys, who had actually seen

the animals, and killed two of them merely for sport, as usual. They

saved a few pounds of hump meat, and all the rest became food for the

wolves and foxes.

It was therefore resolved to leave the buffaloes entirely unmolested

until autumn, and then, when the robes would be in the finest condition,

return for a hunt on a liberal scale. Accordingly, it was decided to

return to Washington without delay, and a courier was dispatched with a

request for transportation to carry our party back to Fort Keogh.

While awaiting the arrival of the wagons, a cowboy in the employ of the

Phillips Land and Cattle Company killed a solitary bull buffalo about 15

miles west of our camp, near Sand Creek. This animal had completely shed

the hair on his body and hind quarters. In addition to the preservation

of his entire skeleton, we prepared the skin also, as an example of the

condition of the buffalo immediately after shedding.

On June 6 the teams from Fort Keogh arrived, and we immediately returned

to Miles City, taking with us our live buffalo calf, two fresh buffalo

skeletons, three bleached skeletons, seven skulls, one skin entire, and

one head skin, in addition to a miscellaneous collection of skins and

skeletons of smaller mammals and birds. On reaching Miles City we

hastily packed and shipped our collection, and, taking the calf with us,

returned at once to Washington.

II. THE HUNT.

On September 24 I arrived at Miles City a second time, fully equipped

for a protracted hunt for buffalo; this time accompanied only by W.

Harvey Brown, a student of the University of Kansas, as field assistant,

having previously engaged three cowboys as guides and hunters--Irwin

Boyd, James McNaney, and L. S. Russell. Messrs. Boyd and Russell were in

Miles City awaiting my arrival, and Mr. McNaney joined us in the field a

few days later. Mr. Boyd acted as my foreman during the entire hunt, a

position which he filled to my entire satisfaction.

Thanks to the energy and good-will of the officers at Fort Keogh, of

which Lieutenant-Colonel Cochran was then in command, our

transportation, camp equipage, and stores were furnished without an

hour's delay. We purchased two months' supplies of commissary stores, a

team, and two saddle-horses, and hired three more horses, a light wagon,

and a set of double harness. Each of the cowboys furnished one horse; so

that in our outfit we had ten head, a team, and two good saddle-horses

for each hunter. The worst feature of the whole question of subsistence

was the absolute necessity of hauling a supply of grain from Miles City

into the heart of the buffalo country for our ten horses. For such work

as they had to encounter it was necessary to feed them constantly and

liberally with oats in order to keep them in condition to do their work.

We took with us 2,000 pounds of oats, and by the beginning of November

as much more had to be hauled up to us.

Thirty six hours after our arrival in Miles City our outfit was

complete, and we crossed the Yellowstone and started up the Sunday Creek

trail. We had from Fort Keogh a six-mule team, an escort of four men, in

charge of Sergeant Bayliss, and an old veteran of more than twenty

years' service, from the Fifth Infantry, Private Patrick McCanna, who

was detailed to act as cook and camp-guard for our party during our stay

in the field.

On September 29 we reached Tow's ranch, the =HV=, on Big Dry Creek

(erroneously called Big Timber Creek on most maps of Montana), at the

mouth of Sand Creek, which here flows into it from the southwest. This

point is said to be 90 miles from Miles City. Here we received our

freight from the six-mule wagon, loaded it with bleached skeletons and

skulls of buffalo, and started it back to the post. One member of the

escort, Private C. S. West, who was then on two months' furlough,

elected to join our party for the hunt, and accordingly remained with us

to its close. Leaving half of our freight stored at the =HV= ranch, we

loaded the remainder upon our own wagon, and started up Sand Creek.

[Illustration: SKETCH MAP OF THE HUNT FOR BUFFALO. MONTANA 1886.]

At this point the hunt began. As the wagon and extra horses proceeded up

the Sand Creek trail in the care of W. Harvey Brown, the three cowboys

and I paired off, and while two hunted through the country along the

south side of the creek, the others took the north. The whole of the

country bordering Sand Creek, quite up to its source, consists of rugged

hills and ridges, which sometimes rise to considerable height, cut

between by great yawning ravines and hollows, such as persecuted game

loves to seek shelter in. Inasmuch as the buffalo we were in search of

had been seen hiding in those ravines, it became necessary to search

through them with systematic thoroughness; a proceeding which was very

wearing upon our horses. Along the south side of Sand Creek, near its

source, the divide between it and Little Dry Creek culminates in a chain

of high, flat-topped buttes, whose summits bear a scanty growth of

stunted pines, which serve to make them conspicuous landmarks. On some

maps these insignificant little buttes are shown as mountains, under the

name of "Piny Buttes."

It was our intention to go to the head of Sand Creek, and beyond, in

case buffaloes were not found earlier. Immediately westward of its

source there is a lofty level plateau, about 3 miles square, which, by

common consent, we called the High Divide. It is the highest ground

anywhere between the Big Dry and the Yellowstone, and is the starting

point of streams that run northward into the Missouri and Big Dry,

eastward into Sand Creek and the Little Dry, southward into Porcupine

Creek and the Yellowstone, and westward into the Musselshell. On three

sides--north, east, and south--it is surrounded by wild and rugged butte

country, and its sides are scored by intricate systems of great yawning

ravines and hollows, steep-sided and very deep, and bad lands of the

worst description.

By the 12th of October the hunt had progressed up Sand Creek to its

source, and westward across the High Divide to Calf Creek, where we

found a hole of wretchedly bad water and went into permanent camp. We

considered that the spot we selected would serve us as a key to the

promising country that lay on three sides of it, and our surmise that

the buffalo were in the habit of hiding in the heads of those great

ravines around the High Divide soon proved to be correct. Our camp at

the head of Calf Creek was about 20 miles east of the Musselshell River,

40 miles south of the Missouri, and about 135 miles from Miles City, as

the trail ran. Four miles north of us, also on Calf Creek, was the line

camp of the =STV= ranch, owned by Messrs. J. H. Conrad & Co., and 18

miles east, near the head of Sand Creek, was the line camp of the

=N=-bar ranch, owned by Mr. Newman. At each of these camps there were

generally from two to four cowboys. From all these gentlemen we received

the utmost courtesy and hospitality on all occasions, and all the

information in regard to buffalo which it was in their power to give. On

many occasions they rendered us valuable assistance, which is hereby

gratefully acknowledged.

We saw no buffalo, nor any signs of any, until October 13. On that day,

while L. S. Russell was escorting our second load of freight across the

High Divide, he discovered a band of seven buffaloes lying in the head

of a deep ravine. He fired upon them, but killed none, and when they

dashed away he gave chase and followed them 2 or 3 miles. Being mounted

on a tired horse, which was unequal to the demands of the chase, he was

finally distanced by the herd, which took a straight course and ran due

south. As it was then nearly night, nothing further could be done that

day except to prepare for a vigorous chase on the morrow. Everything was

got in perfect readiness for an early start, and by daybreak the

following morning the three cowboys and the writer were mounted on our

best horses, and on our way through the bad lands to take up the trail

of the seven buffaloes.

Shortly after sunrise we found the trail, not far from the head of Calf

Creek, and followed it due south. We left the rugged butte region behind

us, and entered a tract of country quite unlike anything we had found

before. It was composed of a succession of rolling hills and deep

hollows, smooth enough on the surface, to all appearances, but like a

desert of sand-hills to traverse. The dry soil was loose and crumbly,

like loose ashes or scoriæ, and the hoofs of our horses sank into it

half-way to the fetlocks at every step. But there was another feature

which was still worse. The whole surface of the ground was cracked and

seamed with a perfect net-work of great cracks, into which our horses

stepped every yard or so, and sank down still farther, with many a

tiresome wrench of the joints. It was terrible ground to go over. To

make it as bad as possible, a thick growth of sage-brush or else

grease-wood was everywhere present for the horses to struggle through,

and when it came to dragging a loaded wagon across that 12-mile stretch

of "bad grounds" or "gumbo ground," as it was called, it was killing

work.

But in spite of the character of this ground, in one way it was a

benefit to us. Owing to its looseness on the surface we were able to

track the buffaloes through it with the greatest ease, whereas on any

other ground in that country it would have been almost impossible. We

followed the trail due south for about 20 miles, which brought us to the

head of a small stream called Taylor Creek. Here the bad grounds ended,

and in the grassy country which lay beyond, tracking was almost

impossible. Just at noon we rode to a high point, and on scanning the

hills and hollows with the binocular discovered the buffaloes lying at

rest on the level top of a small butte 2 miles away. The original bunch

of seven had been joined by an equal number.

We crept up to within 200 yards of the buffaloes, which was as close as

we could go, fired a volley at them just as they lay, and did not even

kill a calf! Instantly they sprang up and dashed away at astonishing

speed, heading straight for the sheltering ravines around the High

Divide.

We had a most exciting and likewise dangerous chase after the herd

through a vast prairie-dog town, honey-combed with holes just right for

a running horse to thrust a leg in up to the knee and snap it off like a

pipe-stem, and across fearfully wide gullies that either had to be

leaped or fallen into. McNaney killed a fine old bull and a beautiful

two year old, or "spike" bull, out of this herd, while I managed to kill

a cow and another large old bull, making four for that day, all told.

This herd of fourteen head was the largest that we saw during the entire

hunt.

Two days later, when we were on the spot with the wagon to skin our game

and haul in the hides, four more buffaloes were discovered within 2

miles of us, and while I worked on one of the large bull skins to save

it from spoiling, the cowboys went after the buffalo, and by a really

brilliant exploit killed them all. The first one to fall was an old cow,

which was killed at the beginning of the chase, the next was an old

bull, who was brought down about 5 miles from the scene of the first

attack, then 2 miles farther on a yearling calf was killed. The fourth

buffalo, an immense old bull, was chased fully 12 miles before he was

finally brought down.

The largest bull fell about 8 miles from our temporary camp, in the

opposite direction from that in which our permanent camp lay, and at

about 3 o'clock in the afternoon. There not being time enough in which

to skin him completely and reach our rendezvous before dark, Messrs.

McNaney and Boyd dressed the carcass to preserve the meat, partly

skinned the legs, and came to camp.

As early as possible the next morning we drove to the carcass with the

wagon, to prepare both skin and skeleton and haul them in. When we

reached it we found that during the night a gang of Indians had robbed

us of our hard-earned spoil. They had stolen the skin and all the

eatable meat, broken up the leg-bones to get at the marrow, and even cut

out the tongue. And to injury the skulking thieves had added insult.

Through laziness they had left the head unskinned, but on one side of it

they had smeared the hair with red war-paint, the other side they had

daubed with yellow, and around the base of one horn they had tied a

strip of red flannel as a signal of defiance. Of course they had left

for parts unknown, and we never saw any signs of them afterward. The

gang visited the =LU=-bar ranch a few days later, so we learned

subsequently. It was then composed of eleven braves(!), who claimed to

be Assinniboines, and were therefore believed to be Piegans, the most

notorious horse and cattle thieves in the Northwest.

On October 22d Mr. Russell ran down in a fair chase a fine bull buffalo,

and killed him in the rough country bordering the High Divide on the

south. This was the ninth specimen. On the 26th we made an other trip

with the wagon to the Buffalo Buttes, as, for the sake of convenience,

we had named the group of buttes near which eight head had already been

taken. While Mr. Brown and I were getting the wagon across the bad

grounds, Messrs. McNaney and Boyd discovered a solitary bull buffalo

feeding in a ravine within a quarter of a mile of our intended camping

place, and the former stalked him and killed him at long range. The

buffalo had all been attracted to that locality by some springs which

lay between two groups of hills, and which was the only water within a

radius of about 15 miles. In addition to water, the grass around the

Buffalo Buttes was most excellent.

During all this time we shot antelope and coyotes whenever an

opportunity offered, and preserved the skins and skeletons of the finest

until we had obtained a very fine series of both. At this season the

pelts of these animals were in the finest possible condition, the hair

having attained its maximum length and density, and, being quite new,

had lost none of its brightness of color, either by wear or the action

of the weather. Along Sand Creek and all around the High Divide antelope

were moderately plentiful (but really scarce in comparison with their

former abundance), so much so that had we been inclined to slaughter we

could have killed a hundred head or more, instead of the twenty that we

shot as specimens and for their flesh. We have it to say that from first

to last not an antelope was killed which was not made use of to the

fullest extent.

On the 31st of October, Mr. Boyd and I discovered a buffalo cow and

yearling calf in the ravines north of the High Divide, within 3 miles of

our camp, and killed them both. The next day Private West arrived with a

six mule team from Fort Keogh, in charge of Corporal Clafer and three

men. This wagon brought us another 2,000 pounds of oats and various

commissary stores. When it started back, on November 3, we sent by it

all the skins and skeletons of buffalo, antelope, etc., which we had

collected up to that date, which made a heavy load for the six mules. On

this same day Mr. McNaney killed two young cow buffaloes in the bad

lands south of the High Divide, which brought our total number up to

fourteen.

On the night of the 3d the weather turned very cold, and on the day

following we experienced our first snow-storm. By that time the water in

the hole, which up to that time had supplied our camp, became so thick

with mud and filth that it was unendurable; and having discovered a fine

pool of pure water in the bottom of a little cañon on the southern slope

of the High Divide we moved to it forthwith. It was really the upper

spring of the main fork of the Big Porcupine, and a finer situation for

a camp does not exist in that whole region. The spot which nature made

for us was sheltered on all sides by the high walls of the cañon, within

easy reach of an inexhaustible supply of good water, and also within

reach of a fair supply of dry fire-wood, which we found half a mile

below. This became our last permanent camp, and its advantages made up

for the barrenness and discomfort of our camp on Calf Creek. Immediately

south of us, and 2 miles distant there rose a lofty conical butte about

600 feet high, which forms a very conspicuous landmark from the south.

We were told that it was visible from 40 miles down the Porcupine.

Strange to say, this valuable landmark was without a name, so far as we

could learn; so, for our own convenience, we christened it Smithsonian

Butte.

The two buffalo cows that Mr. McNaney killed just before we moved our

camp seemed to be the last in the country, for during the following week

we scouted for 15 miles in three directions, north, east, and south,

without finding as much as a hoof-print. At last we decided to go away

and give that country absolute quiet for a week, in the hope that some

more buffalo would come into it. Leaving McCanna and West to take care

of the camp, we loaded a small assortment of general equipage into the

wagon and pulled about 25 miles due west to the Musselshell River.

We found a fine stream of clear water, flowing over sand and pebbles,

with heavy cottonwood timber and thick copses of willow along its banks,

which afforded cover for white-tailed deer. In the rugged brakes, which

led from the level river bottom into a labyrinth of ravines and gullies,

ridges and hog-backs, up to the level of the high plateau above, we

found a scanty growth of stunted cedars and pines, which once sheltered

great numbers of mule deer, elk, and bear. Now, however, few remain, and

these are very hard to find. Even when found, the deer are nearly always

young. Although we killed five mule deer and five white-tails, we did

not kill even one fine buck, and the only one we saw on the whole trip

was a long distance off. We saw fresh tracks of elk, and also grizzly

bear, but our most vigorous efforts to discover the animals themselves

always ended in disappointment. The many bleaching skulls and antlers of

elk and deer, which we found everywhere we went, afforded proof of what

that country had been as a home for wild animals only a few years ago.

We were not a little surprised at finding the fleshless carcasses of

three head of cattle that had been killed and eaten by bears within a

few months.

In addition to ten deer, we shot three wild geese, seven sharp-tailed

grouse, eleven sage grouse, nine Bohemian waxwings, and a magpie, for

their skeletons. We made one trip of several miles up the Musselshell,

and another due west, almost to the Bull Mountains, but no signs of

buffalo were found. The weather at this time was quite cold, the

thermometer registering 6 degrees below zero; but, in spite of the fact

that we were without shelter and had to bivouac in the open, we were,

generally speaking, quite comfortable.

Having found no buffalo by the 17th, we felt convinced that we ought to

return to our permanent camp, and did so on that day. Having brought

back nearly half a wagon-load of specimens in the flesh or half skinned,

it was absolutely necessary that I should remain at camp all the next

day. While I did so, Messrs. McNaney and Boyd rode over to the Buffalo

Buttes, found four fine old buffalo cows, and, after a hard chase,

killed them all.

Under the circumstances, this was the most brilliant piece of work of

the entire hunt. As the four cows dashed past the hunters at the Buffalo

Buttes, heading for the High Divide, fully 20 miles distant, McNaney

killed one cow, and two others went off wounded. Of course the cowboys

gave chase. About 12 miles from the starting-point one of the wounded

cows left her companions, was headed off by Boyd, and killed. About 6

miles beyond that one, McNaney overhauled the third cow and killed her,

but the fourth one got away for a short time. While McNaney skinned the

third cow and dressed the carcass to preserve the meat, Boyd took their

now thoroughly exhausted horses to camp and procured fresh mounts. On

returning to McNaney they set out in pursuit of the fourth cow, chased

her across the High Divide, within a mile or so of our camp, and into

the ravines on the northern slope, where she was killed. She met her

death nearly if not quite 25 miles from the spot where the first one

fell.

The death of these four cows brought our number of buffaloes up to

eighteen, and made us think about the possibilities of getting thirty.

As we were proceeding to the Buffalo Buttes on the day after the "kill"

to gather in the spoil, Mr. Brown and I taking charge of the wagon,

Messrs. McNaney and Boyd went ahead in order to hunt. When within about

5 miles of the Buttes we came unexpectedly upon our companions, down in

a hollow, busily engaged in skinning another old cow, which they had

discovered traveling across the bad grounds, waylaid, and killed.

We camped that night on our old ground at the Buffalo Buttes, and

although we all desired to remain a day or two and hunt for more

buffalo, the peculiar appearance of the sky in the northwest, and the

condition of the atmosphere, warned us that a change of weather was

imminent. Accordingly, the following morning we decided without

hesitation that it was best to get back to camp that day, and it soon

proved very fortunate for us that we so decided.

Feeling that by reason of my work on the specimens I had been deprived

of a fair share of the chase, I arranged for Mr. Boyd to accompany the

wagon on the return trip, that I might hunt through the bad lands west

of the Buffalo Buttes, which I felt must contain some buffalo. Mr.

Russell went northeast and Mr. McNaney accompanied me. About 4 miles

from our late camp we came suddenly upon a fine old solitary bull,

feeding in a hollow between two high and precipitous ridges. After a

short but sharp chase I succeeded in getting a fair shot at him, and

killed him with a ball which broke his left humerus and passed into his

lungs. He was the only large bull killed on the entire trip by a single

shot. He proved to be a very fine specimen, measuring 5 feet 6 inches in

height at the shoulders. The wagon was overtaken and called back to get

the skin, and while it was coming I took a complete series of

measurements and sketches of him as he lay.

Although we removed the skin very quickly, and lost no time in again

starting the wagon to our permanent camp, the delay occasioned by the

death of our twentieth buffalo,--which occurred on November 20,

precisely two months from the date of our leaving Washington to collect

twenty buffalo, it possible,--caused us all to be caught in a

snow-storm, which burst upon us from the northwest. The wagon had to be

abandoned about 12 miles from camp in the bad lands. Mr. Brown packed

the bedding on one of the horses and rode the other, he and Boyd

reaching camp about 9 o'clock that night in a blinding snow-storm. Of

coarse the skins in the wagon were treated with preservatives and

covered up. It proved to be over a week that the wagon and its load had

to remain thus abandoned before it was possible to get to it and bring

it to camp, and even then the task was one of great difficulty. In this

connection I can not refrain from recording the fact that the services

rendered by Mr. W. Harvey Brown on all such trying occasions as the

above were invaluable. He displayed the utmost zeal and intelligence,

not only in the more agreeable kinds of work and sport incident to the

hunt, but also in the disagreeable drudgery, such as team-driving and

working on half-frozen specimens in bitter cold weather.

The storm which set in on the 20th soon developed into a regular

blizzard. A fierce and bitter cold wind swept down from the northwest,

driving the snow before it in blinding gusts. Had our camp been poorly

sheltered we would have suffered, but at it was we were fairly

comfortable.

Having thus completed our task (of getting twenty buffaloes), we were

anxious to get out of that fearful country before we should get caught

in serious difficulties with the weather, and it was arranged that

Private C. S. West should ride to Fort Keogh as soon as possible, with a

request for transportation. By the third day, November 23, the storm had

abated sufficiently that Private West declared his willingness to start.

It was a little risky, but as he was to make only 10 miles the first day

and stop at the =N=-bar camp on Sand Creek, it was thought safe to let

him go. He dressed himself warmly, took my revolver, in order not to be

hampered with a rifle, and set out.

The next day was clear and fine, and we remarked it as an assurance of

Mr. West's safety during his ride from Sand Creek to the =LU=-bar ranch,

his second stopping-place. The distance was about 25 miles, through bad

lands all the way, and it was the only portion of the route which caused

me anxiety for our courier's safety. The snow on the levels was less

than 6 inches deep, the most of it having been blown into drifts and

hollows; but although the coulées were all filled level to the top, our

courier was a man of experience and would know how to avoid them.

The 25th day of November was the most severe day of the storm, the

mercury in our sheltered cañon sinking to -16 degrees. We had hoped to

kill at least five more buffaloes by the time Private West should arrive

with the wagons; but when at the end of a week the storm had spent

itself, the snow was so deep that hunting was totally impossible save in

the vicinity of camp, where there was nothing to kill. We expected the

wagons by the 3d of December, but they did not come that day nor within

the next three. By the 6th the snow had melted off sufficiently that a

buffalo hunt was once more possible, and Mr. McNaney and I decided to

make a final trip to the Buffalo Buttes. The state of the ground made it

impossible for us to go there and return the same day, so we took a

pack-horse and arranged to camp out.

When a little over half-way to our old rendezvous we came upon three

buffaloes in the bad grounds, one of which was an enormous old bull, the

next largest was an adult cow, and the third a two-year-old heifer. Mr.

McNaney promptly knocked down the old cow, while I devoted my attention

to the bull; but she presently got up and made off unnoticed at the

precise moment Mr. McNaney was absorbed in watching my efforts to bring

down the old bull. After a short chase my horse carried me alongside my

buffalo, and as he turned toward me I gave him a shot through the

shoulder, breaking the fore leg and bringing him promptly to the ground.

I then turned immediately to pursue the young cow, but by that time she

had got on the farther side of a deep gully which was filled with snow,

and by the time I got my horse safely across she had distanced me. I

then rode back to the old bull. When he saw me coming he got upon his

feet and ran a short distance, but was easily overtaken. He then stood

at bay, and halting within 30 yards of him I enjoyed the rare

opportunity of studying a live bull buffalo of the largest size on foot

on his native heath. I even made an outline sketch of him in my

note-book. Having studied his form and outlines as much as was really

necessary, I gave him a final shot through the lungs, which soon ended

his career.

This was a truly magnificent specimen in every respect. He was a

"stub-horn" bull, about eleven years old, much larger every way than any

of the others we collected. His height at the shoulder was 5 feet 8

inches perpendicular, or 2 inches more than the next largest of our

collection. His hair was in remarkably fine condition, being long, fine,

thick, and well colored. The hair in his frontlet is 16 inches in

length, and the thick coat of shaggy, straw-colored tufts which covered

his neck and shoulders measured 4 inches. His girth behind the fore leg

was 8 feet 4 inches, and his weight was estimated at 1,600 pounds.

[Illustration: TROPHIES OF THE HUNT. Mounted by the author in the U. S.

National Museum. Reproduced from the \_Cosmopolitan Magazine\_, by

permission of the publishers.]

I was delighted with our remarkably good fortune in securing such a

prize, for, owing to the rapidity with which the large buffaloes are

being found and killed off these days, I had not hoped to capture a

really old individual. Nearly every adult bull we took carried old

bullets in his body, and from this one we took four of various sizes

that had been fired into him on various occasions. One was found

sticking fast in one of the lumbar vertebræ.[79]

[Note 79: This specimen is now the commanding figure of the group of

buffalo which has recently been placed on exhibition in the Museum.]

After a chase of several miles Mr. McNaney finally overhauled his cow

and killed her, which brought the number of buffaloes taken on the fall

hunt up to twenty-two. We spent the night at the Buffalo Buttes and

returned to camp the next day. Neither on that day nor the one following

did the wagons arrive, and on the evening of the 8th we learned from the

cowboys of the =N=-bar camp on Sand Creek that our courier, Private West,

had not been seen or heard from since he left their camp on November 24,

and evidently had got lost and frozen to death in the bad lands.

The next day we started out to search for Private West, or news of him,

and spent the night with Messrs. Brodhurst and Andrews, at their camp on

Sand Creek. On the 10th, Mr. McNaney and I hunted through the bad lands

over the course our courier should have taken, while Messrs. Russell and

Brodhurst looked through the country around the head of the Little Dry.

When McNaney and I reached the =LU=-bar ranch that night we were greatly

rejoiced at finding that West was alive, although badly frost-bitten,

and in Fort Keogh.

It appears that instead of riding due east to the =LU=-bar ranch, he

lost his way in the bad lands, where the buttes all look alike when

covered with snow, and rode southwest. It is at all times an easy matter

for even a cowboy to get lost in Montana if the country is new to him,

and when there is snow on the ground the difficulty of finding one's way

is increased tenfold. There is not only the danger of losing one's way,

but the still greater danger of getting ingulfed in a deep coulée full

of loose snow, which may easily cause both horse and rider to perish

miserably. Even the most experienced riders sometimes ride into coulées

which are level full of snow and hidden from sight.

Private West's experience was a terrible one, and also a wonderful case

of self-preservation. It shows what a man with a cool head and plenty of

grit can go through and live. When he left us he wore two undershirts, a

heavy blanket shirt, a soldier's blouse and overcoat, two pairs of

drawers, a pair of soldier's woolen trousers, and a pair of overalls. On

his feet he wore three pairs of socks, a pair of \_low shoes\_ with canvas

leggins, and he started with his feet tied up in burlaps. His head and

hands were also well protected. He carried a 38-caliber revolver, but,

by a great oversight, only six matches. When he left the =N=-bar camp,

instead of going due east toward the =LU=-bar ranch, he swung around and

went southwest, clear around the head of the Little Dry, and finally

struck the Porcupine south of our camp. The first night out he made a

fire with sage-brush, and kept it going all night. The second night he

also had a fire, but it took his last match to make it. During the first

three days he had no food, but on the fourth he shot a sage-cock with

his revolver, and ate it raw. This effort, however, cost him his last

cartridge. Through hard work and lack of food his pony presently gave

out, and necessitated long and frequent stops for rest. West's feet

threatened to freeze, and he cut off the skirts of his overcoat to wrap

them with, in place of the gunny sacking, that had been worn to rags.

Being afraid to go to sleep at night, he slept by snatches in the

warmest part of the day, while resting his horse.

On the 5th day he began to despair of succor, although he still toiled

southward through the bad lands toward the Yellowstone, where people

lived. On the envelopes which contained my letters he kept a diary of

his wanderings, which could tell his story when the cowboys would find

his body on the spring round-up.

On the afternoon of the sixth day he found a trail and followed it until

nearly night, when he came to Cree's sheep ranch, and found the solitary

ranchman at home. The warm-hearted frontiersman gave the starving

wanderers, man and horse, such a welcome as they stood in need of. West

solemnly declares that in twenty-four hours he ate a whole sheep. After

two or three days of rest and feeding both horse and rider were able to

go on, and in course of time reached Fort Keogh.

Without the loss of a single day Colonel Gibson started three teams and

an escort up to us, and notwithstanding his terrible experience, West

had the pluck to accompany them as guide. His arrival among us once more

was like the dead coming to life again. The train reached our camp on

the 13th, and on the 15th we pulled out for Miles City, loaded to the

wagon-bows with specimens, forage, and camp plunder.

From our camp down to the =HV= ranch, at the mouth of Sand Creek, the

trail was in a terrible condition. But, thanks to the skill and judgment

of the train-master, Mr. Ed. Haskins, and his two drivers, who also knew

their business well, we got safely and in good time over the dangerous

part of our road. Whenever our own tired and overloaded team got stuck

in the mud, or gave out, there was always a pair of mules ready to hitch

on and help us out. As a train-master, Mr. Haskins was a perfect model,

skillful, pushing, good-tempered, and very obliging.

From the =HV= ranch to Miles City the trail was in fine condition, and

we went in as rapidly as possible, fearing to be caught in the

snow-storm which threatened us all the way in. We reached Miles City on

December 20, with our collection complete and in fine condition, and the

next day a snow-storm set in which lasted until the 25th, and resulted

in over a foot of snow. The ice running in the Yellowstone stopped all

the ferry-boats, and it was with good reason that we congratulated

ourselves on the successful termination of our hunt at that particular

time. Without loss of time Mr. Brown and I packed our collection, which

tilled twenty-one large cases, turned in our equipage at Fort Keogh,

sold our horses, and started on our homeward journey. In due course of

time the collection reached the Museum in good condition, and a series

of the best specimens it contains has already been mounted.

At this point it is proper to acknowledge our great indebtedness to the

Secretary of War for the timely co-operation of the War Department,

which rendered the expedition possible. Our thanks are due to the

officers who were successively in command at Fort Keogh during our work,

Col. John D. Wilkins, Col. George M. Gibson, and Lieut. Col. M. A.

Cochran, and their various staff officers; particularly Lieut. C. B.

Thompson, quartermaster, and Lieut. H. K. Bailey, adjutant. It is due

these officers to state that everything we asked for was cheerfully

granted with a degree of promptness which contributed very greatly to

the success of the hunt, and lightened its labors very materially.

I have already acknowledged our indebtedness to the officers of the

Pennsylvania; the Chicago, Milwaukee and St. Paul; and Northern Pacific

railways for the courtesies so liberally extended in our emergency. I

take pleasure in adding that all the officers and employés of the

Northern Pacific Railway with whom we had any relations, particularly

Mr. C. S. Fee, general passenger and ticket agent, treated our party

with the utmost kindness and liberality throughout the trip. We are in

like manner indebted to the officers of the Chicago, Milwaukee and St.

Paul Railway for valuable privileges granted with the utmost cordiality.

Our thanks are also due to Dr. J. C. Merrill, and to Mr. Henry R.

Phillips, of the Phillips Land and Cattle Company, on Little Dry Creek,

for valuable information at a critical moment, and to the latter for

hospitality and assistance in various ways, at times when both were

keenly appreciated.

Counting the specimens taken in the spring, our total catch of buffalo

amounted to twenty-five head, and constituted as complete and fine a

series as could be wished for. I am inclined to believe that in size and

general quality of pelage the adult bull and cow selected and mounted

for our Museum group are not to be surpassed, even if they are ever

equaled, by others of their kind.

The different ages and sexes were thus represented in our collection: 10

old bulls, 1 young bull, 7 old cows, 4 young cows, 2 yearling calves, 1

three-months calf[80]; total, 25 specimens.

[Note 80: Caught alive, but died in captivity July 26, 1886, and now in

the mounted group.]

Our total collection of specimens of \_Bison americanus\_, including

everything taken, contained the following: 24 fresh skins, 1 head skin,

8 fresh skeletons, 8 dry skeletons, 51 dry skulls, 2 foetal young;

total, 94 specimens.

Our collection as a whole also included a fine series of skins and

skeletons of antelope, deer of two species, coyotes, jack rabbits, sage

grouse (of which we prepared twenty-four rough skeletons for the

Department of Comparative Anatomy), sharp tailed grouse, and specimens

of all the other species of birds and small mammals to be found in that

region at that season. From this \_matériel\_ we now have on exhibition

besides the group of buffaloes, a family group of antelope, another of

coyotes, and another of prairie dogs, all with natural surroundings.

III. THE MOUNTED GROUP IN THE NATIONAL MUSEUM.

The result of the Smithsonian expedition for bison which appeals most

strongly to the general public is the huge group of six choice specimens

of both sexes and all ages, mounted with natural surroundings, and

displayed in a superb mahogany case. The dimensions of the group are as

follows: Length, 16 feet; width, 12 feet, and height, 10 feet. The

subjoined illustration is a very fair representation of the principal

one of its four sides, and the following admirable description (by Mr.

Harry P. Godwin), from the Washington \_Star\_ of March 10, 1888, is both

graphic and accurate:

A SCENE FROM MONTANA--SIX OF MR. HORNADAY'S BUFFALOES FORM A PICTURESQUE

GROUP--A BIT OF THE WILD WEST REPRODUCED AT THE NATIONAL

MUSEUM--SOMETHING NOVEL IN THE WAY OF TAXIDERMY--REAL BUFFALO-GRASS,

REAL MONTANA DIRT, AND REAL BUFFALOES.

A little bit of Montana--a small square patch from the wildest part of

the wild West--has been transferred to the National Museum. It is so

little that Montana will never miss it, but enough to enable one who has

the faintest glimmer of imagination to see it all for himself--the

hummocky prairie, the buffalo-grass, the sage-brush, and the buffalo. It

is as though a little group of buffalo that have come to drink at a pool

had been suddenly struck motionless by some magic spell, each in a

natural attitude, and then the section of prairie, pool, buffalo, and

all had been carefully cut out and brought to the National Museum. All

this is in a huge glass case, the largest ever made for the Museum. This

case and the space about it, at the south end of the south hall, has

been inclosed by high screens for many days while the taxidermist and

his assistants have been at work. The finishing touches were put on

to-day, and the screens will be removed Monday, exposing to view what is

regarded as a triumph of the taxidermist's art. The group, with its

accessories, has been prepared so as to tell in an attractive way to the

general visitor to the Museum the story of the buffalo, but care has

been taken at the same time to secure an accuracy of detail that will

satisfy the critical scrutiny of the most technical naturalist.

THE ACCESSORIES.

The pool of water is a typical alkaline water-hole, such as are found on

the great northern range of bison, and are resorted to for water by wild

animals in the fall when the small streams are dry. The pool is in a

depression in the dry bed of a coulée or small creek. A little mound

that rises beside the creek has been partially washed away by the water,

leaving a crumbling bank, which shows the strata of the earth, a very

thin layer of vegetable soil, beneath a stratum of grayish earth, and a

layer of gravel, from which protrude a fossil bone or two. The whole

bank shows the marks of erosion by water. Near by the pool a small

section of the bank has fallen. A buffalo trail passes by the pool in

front. This is a narrow path, well beaten down, depressed, and bare of

grass. Such paths were made by herds of bison all over their pasture

region as they traveled down water-courses, in single file, searching

for water. In the grass some distance from the pool lie the bleaching

skulls of two buffalo who have fallen victims to hunters who have

cruelly lain in wait to get a shot at the animals as they come to

drink. Such relics, strewn all over the plain, tell the story of the

extermination of the American bison. About the pool and the sloping

mound grow the low buffalo-grass, tufts of tall bunch-grass and

sage-brush, and a species of prickly pear. The pool is clear and

tranquil. About its edges is a white deposit of alkali. These are the

scenic accessories of the buffalo group, but they have an interest

almost equal to that of the buffaloes themselves, for they form really

and literally a genuine bit of the West. The homesick Montana cowboy,

far from his wild haunts, can here gaze upon his native sod again; for

the sod, the earth that forms the face of the bank, the sage-brush, and

all were brought from Montana--all except the pool. The pool is a glassy

delusion, and very perfect in its way. One sees a plant growing beneath

the water, and in the soft, oozy bottom, near the edge, are the deep

prints made by the fore feet of a big buffalo bull. About the soft,

moist earth around the pool, and in the buffalo trail are the

foot-tracks of the buffalo that have tramped around the pool, some of

those nearest the edge having filled with water.

THE SIX BUFFALOES.

The group comprises six buffaloes. In front of the pool, as if just

going to drink, is the huge buffalo bull, the giant of his race, the

last one that was secured by the Smithsonian party in 1888, and the one

that is believed to be the largest specimen of which there is authentic

record. Near by is a cow eight years old, a creature that would be

considered of great dimensions in any other company than that of the big

bull. Near the cow is a suckling calf, four months old. Upon the top of

the mound is a "spike" bull, two and a half years old; descending the

mound away from the pool is a young cow three years old, on one side,

and on the other a male calf a year and a half old. All the members of

the group are disposed in natural attitudes. The young cow is snuffing

at a bunch of tall grass; the old bull and cow are turning their heads

in the same direction apparently, as if alarmed by something

approaching; the others, having slaked their thirst, appear to be moving

contentedly away. The four months' old calf was captured alive and

brought to this city. It lived for some days in the Smithsonian grounds,

but pined for its prairie home, and finally died. It is around the great

bull that the romance and main interest of the group centers.

\* \* \* \* \*

It seemed as if Providence had ordained that this splendid animal,

perfect in limb, noble in size, should be saved to serve as a monument

to the greatness of his race, that once roamed the prairies in myriads.

Bullets found in his body showed that he had been chased and hunted

before, but fate preserved him for the immortality of a Museum exhibit.

His vertical height at the shoulders is 5 feet 8 inches. The thick hair

adds enough to his height to make it full 6 feet. The length of his head

and body is 9 feet 2 inches, his girth 8 feet 4 inches and his weight

is, or was, about 1,600 pounds.

THE TAXIDERMIST'S OBJECT LESSONS.

This group, with its accessories, is, in point of size, about the

biggest thing ever attempted by a taxidermist. It was mounted by Mr.

Hornaday, assisted by Messrs. J. Palmer and A. H. Forney. It represents

a new departure in mounting specimens for museums. Generally such

specimens have been mounted singly, upon a flat surface. The American

mammals, collected by Mr. Hornaday, will be mounted in a manner that

will make each piece or group an object lesson, telling something of the

history and the habits of the animal. The first group produced as one of

the results of the Montana hunt comprised three coyotes. Two of them are

struggling, and one might almost say snarling, over a bone. They do not

stand on a painted board, but on a little patch of soil. Two other

groups designed by Mr. Hornaday, and executed by Mr. William Palmer, are

about to be placed in the Museum. One of these represents a family of

prairie-dogs. They are disposed about a prairie-dog mound. One sits on

its haunches eating; others are running about. Across the mouth of the

burrow, just ready to disappear into it, is another one, startled for

the moment by the sudden appearance of a little burrowing owl that has

alighted on one side of the burrow. The owl and the dog are good friends

and live together in the same burrow, but there appears to be strained

relations between the two for the moment.

MAP ILLUSTRATING THE EXTERMINATION OF THE AMERICAN BISON.

Prepared by W. T. Hornaday.

INDEX.

A.

Abundance of the American bison, 387-393.

Accidents to bison herds, 420.

Affection, instinct of, in the bison, 433.

\_Agropyrum\_, 429.

Alabama, 380.

Albinism in the bison, 411.

Allard, Mr. Charles, 461.

Allen, Mr. J. A., on the American bison, 377, 381, 385, 387, 450, 480.

"American Field," quotation from, 433.

Fur Company, 488.

Andrews, Mr. Harry, 502.

\_Andropogon provincialis\_, 427, 429.

\_scoparius\_, 429.

Argoll, Capt. Sam'l, discovery of bison by, 375, 378.

Arkansas, 375.

\_Aristida purpurea\_, 428

Ashe, Mr. Thomas, on the buffalo, 420, 485.

\_Astragalus molissimus\_, 429.

Atchison, Topeka and Santa Fé Railway, 493, 496, 498, 499.

Athabasca, buffaloes in, 523-524.

\_Atriplex canescens\_, 429.

Audubon and Bachman, observations by, 400.

Aurochs, or European bison, 394.

B.

Bailey, Lieut. H. K., 545.

Baird, Prof. S. F., expedition for buffaloes, sent out by, 529.

Baker & Co., Messrs. I. G., 411, 506.

Bedson, Mr. S. L., buffalo-breeding by, 452, 454-456.

herd owned by, 458, 460.

Berlandier, Dr., on bison in Mexico, 381.

Bismark Grove, Kans., buffaloes at, 461.

Bison, the American.

abundance of, 387-393.

accidents to herds of, 420.

adult bull of, 402-406.

cow of, 406, 436.

affection in the 433.

albinism in the, 414.

as a beast of burden, 457.

bones of the, 445.

breeding habits of, 425.

season of, 396, 415.

calf of the, 366-401, 425, 433.

change of form in, 377, 394, 409.

character of, 393.

color of, 396-403.

courage of, 432.

cow of, 406-436.

Bison, cross-breeding, 451-458.

domestication of, 379, 451-458.

fear in 432.

food of, 426-429.

habits of, 415-426.

in running, 422, 430-431.

in winter, 423.

when wounded, 426.

hair of, 449.

"hide" of, 445, 505-507.

horns of, 405, 406.

hunting the, 405, 470, 478, 480, 483, 484, 536-542.

meat of, 446, 448.

mental capacity of, 429-434.

migrations of, 389, 420, 424-429.

monograph of, by J. A. Allen, 387.

"mountain" form of, 407-412.

mounted skins of, 396, 412, 546-548.

pelage of, 412-414.

protection of, possible, 435.

rank of, with other \_Bovidæ\_, 393.

reasoning powers of, 429.

robe of, 441-415, 453, 470.

shedding of pelage of, 412-414.

size of, 405, 407.

slaughter of the, 486-513.

Smithsonian expedition for, 529-546.

"spike bull" of, 401.

"wood" variety of, 407-412.

"yearling" of, 401.

Blackford, Mr. E. G., buffaloes presented by, 463, 527.

Bones, buffalo, utilization of, 445.

Boskowitz, Messrs. J. & A., 394.

\_Bouteloua oligostachya\_, 427, 428.

Boyd, Mr. Irvin, 534, 537, 538, 540.

Breeding of the buffalo, 390, 415, 425.

with domestic cattle, 452-458, 528.

British Possessions, buffalo in the 384, 408, 489, 504, 523.

Brown, Mr. W. Harvey, 534, 535, 541.

\_Buchloë dactyloides\_, 428.

Buffalo (see Bison, American.)

Buffalo Bill (see Cody, Hon. W. F.)

Buffalo Buttes, 538, 540, 542.

Buffalo "chips," 541.

Buffalo grass, 427, 428.

Byrd, Col. William, 376, 449.

C.

Cabeza de Vaca, Alvar Nuñez, 373.

Calf of the buffalo, 396-401, 425, 433.

pelage of, 396-398.

capture of a, 532.

Calf Creek, Montana, 535, 536.

Canadian Pacific Railway, 504.

Captivity, list of buffaloes in, 458-464.

Carey, Hon. Joseph M., 522.

Carolina, North, 376, 379.

South, 379.

Castañeda, description of American bison by, 374.

Catlin, George, on buffalo calves, 398.

on buffalo hunting, 472, 481.

on extermination of the buffalo, 488.

on habits of the buffalo, 419, 423, 434.

stopped by herd, 392.

Cattle-growers, value of bison to, 451-458.

Cattle, Western range, 452.

Central Park menagerie, New York, 463.

Change of form in American bison, 377, 394, 409.

Character of the American bison, 393.

Chase of the buffalo, on horseback, 470-478.

Chicago, Milwaukee and St. Paul Railway, courtesies extended by, 530.

"Chips," buffalo, 451.

Christy, Mr. Miller, on the buffalo, 523.

Cochran, Lieut. Col. M. A., 534, 545.

Cody, Hon. W. F., 460, 477.

Cole, the Hon. Mr., of California, 514.

Color of the American bison, 396, 403.

Colorado, 488, 523.

Completeness of the bison's extermination, 521-525.

Conger, the Hon. Mr., 516, 517, 519.

Congress, National Zoological Park established by, 528.

Congressional legislation to protect the bison, 513-521.

Cory, Mr. C. B., 523.

Coronado, penetration of buffalo range by, 374, 383.

Cortez, American bison first seen by, 373.

Courage, instinct of, in the bison, 432.

Cow, the adult buffalo, 406, 436.

young buffalo, 406.

Cox, Hon. S. S., 515, 516.

Cree Indians, 478, 489, 504, 505, 527.

Cross-breeding between the buffalo and domestic cattle, 451-458.

D.

Dakota, 389, 489, 490, 512.

Davis, Mr. J. N., 512.

Davis, Mr. Theo. R., 483.

Davis, Mr. W. W., records of Coronado's march, by, 383.

Dawes, Hon. Henry L., 517.

Decoying and driving buffaloes, 483.

De Solis, description of bison, by, 373.

Destruction of the southern herd, 492-502.

northern herd, 502-513.

Discovery of the American bison:

in captivity, by Cortez, 373.

eastern North America, by Argoll, 375.

Illinois, by Father Hennepin, 375.

Texas, by Cabeza de Vaca, 373.

Coronado, 373, 383.

District of Columbia, 375, 378.

Distribution of the American bison, 376-383, 402, 503, 508.

geographical center of, 388.

Division of the great buffalo range, 492.

Dodge, Col. R. I., observations on the buffalo, by, 389, 392,

400-409, 424, 433, 471, 474, 493, 495, 498.

Domestication of the American bison, 379, 452-458, 528.

Dry Creek, Big, 512, 530, 534.

Little, 532, 533, 535.

Dupree. Mr. F., buffaloes owned by, 462.

E.

Eldridge, the Hon. Mr., 516.

Estimate of buffaloes, 391, 504, 509.

Expedition for bison sent by the Smithsonian, 522, 529-546.

Expeditions of the Red River half-breeds, 436, 437, 474.

Extermination of the American bison:

cause of the, 454.

completeness of the, 521-525.

effects of the, 525-527.

methods employed in the, 465, 470, 478, 480, 483, 484.

north of Union Pacific Railway, 502-513.

progress of the, 484.

share of the Indians in the, 478.

south of the Union Pacific Railway, 498-502.

west of the Rocky Mountains, 486.

Extermination of American quadrupeds, 487, 491, 502.

F.

Fear, instinct of, in the bison, 432.

Fee, Mr. C. S., favors extended by, 545.

\_Festuca scabrella\_, 429.

"Field," the London, quotation from, 523.

Fleet, Henry, mention of bison on the Potomac, by, 378.

Food of the bison, 426-434.

"Forest and Stream," quotations from, 411, 511.

Forney, Mr. A. H., 531.

Fort Keogh, buffaloes near, 509.

Fort, the Hon. Mr., of Illinois, 515, 516, 517, 518, 519.

G.

Gaur, or Indian bison, 393.

Geographical distribution of the bison, 376-388, 492.

Georgia, 379.

Gibson, Col. Geo. M., 544, 545.

Godwin, Mr. Harry P., 546.

Goode, Prof. G. Brown, 379.

Goodnight, Mr. Charles, buffaloes owned by, 460.

Great Slave Lake, 384, 408.

Group of buffaloes in the National Museum. 546-548.

H.

Habits of the bison, 415-426.

Hair of the buffalo, uses of the, 449.

Half-breeds of the Northwest Territories, 436, 474, 488, 504.

Hannaford, Mr. J. M., letter from, 507.

"Harper's Magazine," quotation from, 483.

Harris, Capt. Moses, 521.

Harris, Mr. Robert, courtesies extended by, 530.

Haskins, Mr. Edward, train-master, 544.

Hawley, Hon. J. R., 517.

Hazen, General W. B., on buffalo slaughter, 514, 516.

Hedley, Mr. George H., with expedition for bison 531.

Hennepin, Father, bison seen in Illinois by, 388.

Herds, list of captive bison, 458-464.

Hides, buffalo, 445, 505, 506, 507.

High Divide, 535, 536, 538, 542.

Hind, Prof. H. Y., 407, 476, 478.

Holman, Hon. W. S., 516.

Hornaday, W. T., group of bison by, 546-548.

Horns of the American bison, 405, 407.

Huguenot settlers, domestication of bison by, 379, 451.

Hunting the buffalo, method of

decoying and driving, 483.

horseback, 470.

impounding, 478.

on snow shoes, 484.

"still-hunt," 465.

"surround," 480.

Hunting on the Musselshell River, 539.

Hybrid, the buffalo-domestic, 454-457.

I.

Idaho, 383.

Illinois, 385-388.

Impounding buffaloes, 478.

Indiana, 385.

Indians:

responsibility of, for buffalo slaughter, 506.

robes marketed by northern, 505.

share of the, in buffalo destruction, 478, 480, 483, 484,

489, 490, 500, 505, 506, 512.

starving for lack of the buffalo, 526.

who subsisted on the buffalo, 526.

J.

Jones, Mr. C. J., breeding of buffaloes, by, 452, 454, 456.

buffaloes captured by, 458, 523.

buffalo herd owned by, 458.

K.

Kansas, 391, 424, 496, 501.

Kasson, Hon. J. A., 517.

Kenaston, Prof. C. A., 505.

Kentucky, 388, 420.

Keogh, Fort, 509, 531.

\_Koeleria cristata\_, 429.

L.

Lewis and Clark, buffaloes seen by, 389, 483.

Lincoln Park, Chicago, buffaloes in, 462.

Loco weed not eaten by the buffalo, 429.

Louisiana, 380.

M.

Macoun, Prof. John, 524, 526.

"Manitoba and the great Northwest," 524, 526.

Maryland, 378.

McCormick, Hon. R. C., 514, 516, 518.

McGillycuddy, Dr. V. T., buffaloes owned by, 462.

McNaney, Mr. James, 421, 424, 467, 534, 537, 538, 540, 542.

Meat of the buffalo, 446, 448.

Mental capacity of the American bison, 429-434.

Merrill, Dr. J. C., 530, 545.

Mexico, 381.

Migrating habits of the buffalo, 389, 420, 424-425.

Miles City, Montana, 531, 534, 541.

Miller, Mr. Roswell, courtesies extended by, 530.

Minnesota, 385.

Mississippi, 380.

Monograph on "The American Bison," 387.

Montana, 421, 508, 509, 510, 511.

"Mountain buffalo," 407-412.

Mounted skins of buffaloes, 396, 412, 546-548.

Museum, National, 395, 527, 546.

Musselshell River, 535, 539.

N.

National Museum, live buffaloes at the, 395, 463, 527.

mounted buffaloes in the, 396, 397, 401, 402, 405, 406, 407,

546-548.

Nelson, Mr. E. W., 385.

New Mexico, 383.

New York, 385.

Northern herd, destruction of the, 502-513.

Northern Pacific Railway, 502, 507, 511, 513.

courtesies extended by, 530.

Northwest Territories (British), 384, 408, 489, 523.

O.

Ohio, 385.

Omaha Indians, buffalo hunting by, 477.

Oregon, 389.

Oregon trail, 491.

P.

Partello, Lieut. J. M. T., 509.

Peace River, buffaloes on the, 524.

Pelage of the American bison, 396, 414, 415, 442, 453.

Pemmican, 447.

Pennsylvania, the buffalo in, 386, 387, 420, 485.

Pennsylvania Railway, courtesies extended by, 530.

Phillips, Mr. Henry R., courtesies extended by, 531, 545.

"Plains of the Great West," 389, 391, 409.

\_Poa tenuifolia\_, 429.

Porcupine Creek, buffaloes on, 512, 522, 532.

Products of the buffalo, 434-451.

Protection of American animals, 435, 520, 521.

the bison possible, 435, 520.

R.

Ranch, LU-bar, 532, 543.

the HV, 534, 544.

Railways, influence of the, in buffalo slaughter, 490-493, 507.

Rank of the American bison, 393.

Reasoning faculty of the bison, 429-430.

Recuperative power of the bison, 426.

Red Buttes, 531.

Red River half-breeds, 474, 488.

"Red River Settlement," 436, 450, 474, 475.

Regan, the Hon. Mr., 518.

Robe of the American bison, 441-445, 453, 470.

best season for taking, 442.

preparation of the, 442, 443, 470.

trade in, 513.

utilization of, 411, 505.

value of, 394, 444, 445.

varieties and classification of, 443, 444.

Ross, Mr. Alexander (\_see\_ "Red River Settlement.")

"Running" buffaloes, 470.

Running power and habits of the buffalo, 422, 430, 431.

Russell, Mr. L. S., 534, 536, 537, 538.

S.

Sage brush, 547.

Sand Creek, Montana, 534, 535, 538.

Schulz, Dr., on the buffalo in Athabasca, 523-524.

Secretary of War, favors extended by, 530-545.

Shufeldt, Dr. R. W., on mountain buffaloes, 411.

Sibley, Hon. H. H., 474.

"Sioux City Journal," quotation from, 503.

Sioux Indiana, destruction of buffaloes by, 490, 497, 500, 505.

Slaughter of the buffalo, 486-513.

Smith, Mr. V., 510, 512.

Smithsonian Butte, 539.

Smithsonian Institution expedition for buffaloes, 522, 529-546.

Snow-shoes, hunting buffaloes on, 484.

Southern buffalo herd, destruction of, 492-502.

"Spike" bull buffalo, 401.

"Star, Washington," description from the, 546-548.

Starin, Mr. J. H., buffaloes owned by, 463.

Statistics of the slaughter of the southern herd, 498-502.

buffaloes now living, 458-461, 525.

Stephenson, Dr. William, 522.

Still hunt, 465-510.

\_Stipa comata\_, 429.

\_sparica\_, 428.

\_viridula\_, 429.

Stub-horn bull, killed by author, 542.

T.

Tepee, hides required for a, 505.

Temper of the bison, 434.

Tennessee, 388.

Texas, existence the bison in, 374, 381, 501, 502.

Thompson, Lieut. C. B., 545.

Thompson, Mr. Frank, courtesies extended by, 530.

"Times, Kansas City," quotation from, 461.

U.

Ullman, Mr. Joseph buffalo product handled by, 394.

Utah, 383.

Utilization of the buffalo, 437.

V.

Value of the bison to man, 434-451, 526.

Value of a single bison on the range, 435, 436.

buffalo to cattle-growers, 451, 458.

buffalo-robe, 498.

products handled by two firms, 439-440.

Varner, Mr. Allen, 491.

Virginia, the buffalo in, 376, 378, 379.

W.

Wastefulness in buffalo slaughter, 494, 496-498, 510.

Weapons used in buffalo hunting, 466, 467, 470, 477.

West, Mr. C. S., 534, 538, 541, 543.

Wichita (Kansas) "World," 500.

Wilkins, Col. John D., 545.

Wilson, the Hon. Mr., 514.

Winston, Mr. B. C., 463, 522.

Winter habits of the buffalo, 423.

Wisconsin, 385.

Wood buffaloes, 407-412.

Wounded bison, habits of, 426.

Wyoming, 522.

Y.

Yearling of the buffalo, 401.

Yellowstone Park, buffaloes in, 512, 521, 522, 527.

Yellowstone Rivers, 531, 544.

Young Mr. Harrison, S., 524.

Z.

Zoological Garden of Cincinnati, 462.

Philadelphia, 461.

Park at Washington, establishment of, by Congress, 528.

End of the Project Gutenberg EBook of The Extermination of the American Bison, by

William T. Hornaday

\*\*\* END OF THIS PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK THE EXTERMINATION OF THE \*\*\*

\*\*\*\*\* This file should be named 17748-8.txt or 17748-8.zip \*\*\*\*\*

This and all associated files of various formats will be found in:

http://www.gutenberg.org/1/7/7/4/17748/

Produced by Chuck Greif, Tony Browne and the Online

Distributed Proofreading Team at http://www.pgdp.net

Updated editions will replace the previous one--the old editions

will be renamed.

Creating the works from public domain print editions means that no

one owns a United States copyright in these works, so the Foundation

(and you!) can copy and distribute it in the United States without

permission and without paying copyright royalties. Special rules,

set forth in the General Terms of Use part of this license, apply to

copying and distributing Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works to

protect the PROJECT GUTENBERG-tm concept and trademark. Project

Gutenberg is a registered trademark, and may not be used if you

charge for the eBooks, unless you receive specific permission. If you

do not charge anything for copies of this eBook, complying with the

rules is very easy. You may use this eBook for nearly any purpose

such as creation of derivative works, reports, performances and

research. They may be modified and printed and given away--you may do

practically ANYTHING with public domain eBooks. Redistribution is

subject to the trademark license, especially commercial

redistribution.

\*\*\* START: FULL LICENSE \*\*\*

THE FULL PROJECT GUTENBERG LICENSE

PLEASE READ THIS BEFORE YOU DISTRIBUTE OR USE THIS WORK

To protect the Project Gutenberg-tm mission of promoting the free

distribution of electronic works, by using or distributing this work

(or any other work associated in any way with the phrase "Project

Gutenberg"), you agree to comply with all the terms of the Full Project

Gutenberg-tm License (available with this file or online at

http://gutenberg.org/license).

Section 1. General Terms of Use and Redistributing Project Gutenberg-tm

electronic works

1.A. By reading or using any part of this Project Gutenberg-tm

electronic work, you indicate that you have read, understand, agree to

and accept all the terms of this license and intellectual property

(trademark/copyright) agreement. If you do not agree to abide by all

the terms of this agreement, you must cease using and return or destroy

all copies of Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works in your possession.

If you paid a fee for obtaining a copy of or access to a Project

Gutenberg-tm electronic work and you do not agree to be bound by the

terms of this agreement, you may obtain a refund from the person or

entity to whom you paid the fee as set forth in paragraph 1.E.8.

1.B. "Project Gutenberg" is a registered trademark. It may only be

used on or associated in any way with an electronic work by people who

agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement. There are a few

things that you can do with most Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works

even without complying with the full terms of this agreement. See

paragraph 1.C below. There are a lot of things you can do with Project

Gutenberg-tm electronic works if you follow the terms of this agreement

and help preserve free future access to Project Gutenberg-tm electronic

works. See paragraph 1.E below.

1.C. The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation ("the Foundation"

or PGLAF), owns a compilation copyright in the collection of Project

Gutenberg-tm electronic works. Nearly all the individual works in the

collection are in the public domain in the United States. If an

individual work is in the public domain in the United States and you are

located in the United States, we do not claim a right to prevent you from

copying, distributing, performing, displaying or creating derivative

works based on the work as long as all references to Project Gutenberg

are removed. Of course, we hope that you will support the Project

Gutenberg-tm mission of promoting free access to electronic works by

freely sharing Project Gutenberg-tm works in compliance with the terms of

this agreement for keeping the Project Gutenberg-tm name associated with

the work. You can easily comply with the terms of this agreement by

keeping this work in the same format with its attached full Project

Gutenberg-tm License when you share it without charge with others.

1.D. The copyright laws of the place where you are located also govern

what you can do with this work. Copyright laws in most countries are in

a constant state of change. If you are outside the United States, check

the laws of your country in addition to the terms of this agreement

before downloading, copying, displaying, performing, distributing or

creating derivative works based on this work or any other Project

Gutenberg-tm work. The Foundation makes no representations concerning

the copyright status of any work in any country outside the United

States.

1.E. Unless you have removed all references to Project Gutenberg:

1.E.1. The following sentence, with active links to, or other immediate

access to, the full Project Gutenberg-tm License must appear prominently

whenever any copy of a Project Gutenberg-tm work (any work on which the

phrase "Project Gutenberg" appears, or with which the phrase "Project

Gutenberg" is associated) is accessed, displayed, performed, viewed,

copied or distributed:

This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere at no cost and with

almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or

re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg License included

with this eBook or online at www.gutenberg.org

1.E.2. If an individual Project Gutenberg-tm electronic work is derived

from the public domain (does not contain a notice indicating that it is

posted with permission of the copyright holder), the work can be copied

and distributed to anyone in the United States without paying any fees

or charges. If you are redistributing or providing access to a work

with the phrase "Project Gutenberg" associated with or appearing on the

work, you must comply either with the requirements of paragraphs 1.E.1

through 1.E.7 or obtain permission for the use of the work and the

Project Gutenberg-tm trademark as set forth in paragraphs 1.E.8 or

1.E.9.

1.E.3. If an individual Project Gutenberg-tm electronic work is posted

with the permission of the copyright holder, your use and distribution

must comply with both paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 and any additional

terms imposed by the copyright holder. Additional terms will be linked

to the Project Gutenberg-tm License for all works posted with the

permission of the copyright holder found at the beginning of this work.

1.E.4. Do not unlink or detach or remove the full Project Gutenberg-tm

License terms from this work, or any files containing a part of this

work or any other work associated with Project Gutenberg-tm.

1.E.5. Do not copy, display, perform, distribute or redistribute this

electronic work, or any part of this electronic work, without

prominently displaying the sentence set forth in paragraph 1.E.1 with

active links or immediate access to the full terms of the Project

Gutenberg-tm License.

1.E.6. You may convert to and distribute this work in any binary,

compressed, marked up, nonproprietary or proprietary form, including any

word processing or hypertext form. However, if you provide access to or

distribute copies of a Project Gutenberg-tm work in a format other than

"Plain Vanilla ASCII" or other format used in the official version

posted on the official Project Gutenberg-tm web site (www.gutenberg.org),

you must, at no additional cost, fee or expense to the user, provide a

copy, a means of exporting a copy, or a means of obtaining a copy upon

request, of the work in its original "Plain Vanilla ASCII" or other

form. Any alternate format must include the full Project Gutenberg-tm

License as specified in paragraph 1.E.1.

1.E.7. Do not charge a fee for access to, viewing, displaying,

performing, copying or distributing any Project Gutenberg-tm works

unless you comply with paragraph 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.8. You may charge a reasonable fee for copies of or providing

access to or distributing Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works provided

that

- You pay a royalty fee of 20% of the gross profits you derive from

the use of Project Gutenberg-tm works calculated using the method

you already use to calculate your applicable taxes. The fee is

owed to the owner of the Project Gutenberg-tm trademark, but he

has agreed to donate royalties under this paragraph to the

Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation. Royalty payments

must be paid within 60 days following each date on which you

prepare (or are legally required to prepare) your periodic tax

returns. Royalty payments should be clearly marked as such and

sent to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation at the

address specified in Section 4, "Information about donations to

the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation."

- You provide a full refund of any money paid by a user who notifies

you in writing (or by e-mail) within 30 days of receipt that s/he

does not agree to the terms of the full Project Gutenberg-tm

License. You must require such a user to return or

destroy all copies of the works possessed in a physical medium

and discontinue all use of and all access to other copies of

Project Gutenberg-tm works.

- You provide, in accordance with paragraph 1.F.3, a full refund of any

money paid for a work or a replacement copy, if a defect in the

electronic work is discovered and reported to you within 90 days

of receipt of the work.

- You comply with all other terms of this agreement for free

distribution of Project Gutenberg-tm works.

1.E.9. If you wish to charge a fee or distribute a Project Gutenberg-tm

electronic work or group of works on different terms than are set

forth in this agreement, you must obtain permission in writing from

both the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation and Michael

Hart, the owner of the Project Gutenberg-tm trademark. Contact the

Foundation as set forth in Section 3 below.

1.F.

1.F.1. Project Gutenberg volunteers and employees expend considerable

effort to identify, do copyright research on, transcribe and proofread

public domain works in creating the Project Gutenberg-tm

collection. Despite these efforts, Project Gutenberg-tm electronic

works, and the medium on which they may be stored, may contain

"Defects," such as, but not limited to, incomplete, inaccurate or

corrupt data, transcription errors, a copyright or other intellectual

property infringement, a defective or damaged disk or other medium, a

computer virus, or computer codes that damage or cannot be read by

your equipment.

1.F.2. LIMITED WARRANTY, DISCLAIMER OF DAMAGES - Except for the "Right

of Replacement or Refund" described in paragraph 1.F.3, the Project

Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the owner of the Project

Gutenberg-tm trademark, and any other party distributing a Project

Gutenberg-tm electronic work under this agreement, disclaim all

liability to you for damages, costs and expenses, including legal

fees. YOU AGREE THAT YOU HAVE NO REMEDIES FOR NEGLIGENCE, STRICT

LIABILITY, BREACH OF WARRANTY OR BREACH OF CONTRACT EXCEPT THOSE

PROVIDED IN PARAGRAPH F3. YOU AGREE THAT THE FOUNDATION, THE

TRADEMARK OWNER, AND ANY DISTRIBUTOR UNDER THIS AGREEMENT WILL NOT BE

LIABLE TO YOU FOR ACTUAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE OR

INCIDENTAL DAMAGES EVEN IF YOU GIVE NOTICE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH

DAMAGE.

1.F.3. LIMITED RIGHT OF REPLACEMENT OR REFUND - If you discover a

defect in this electronic work within 90 days of receiving it, you can

receive a refund of the money (if any) you paid for it by sending a

written explanation to the person you received the work from. If you

received the work on a physical medium, you must return the medium with

your written explanation. The person or entity that provided you with

the defective work may elect to provide a replacement copy in lieu of a

refund. If you received the work electronically, the person or entity

providing it to you may choose to give you a second opportunity to

receive the work electronically in lieu of a refund. If the second copy

is also defective, you may demand a refund in writing without further

opportunities to fix the problem.

1.F.4. Except for the limited right of replacement or refund set forth

in paragraph 1.F.3, this work is provided to you 'AS-IS', WITH NO OTHER

WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO

WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTIBILITY OR FITNESS FOR ANY PURPOSE.

1.F.5. Some states do not allow disclaimers of certain implied

warranties or the exclusion or limitation of certain types of damages.

If any disclaimer or limitation set forth in this agreement violates the

law of the state applicable to this agreement, the agreement shall be

interpreted to make the maximum disclaimer or limitation permitted by

the applicable state law. The invalidity or unenforceability of any

provision of this agreement shall not void the remaining provisions.

1.F.6. INDEMNITY - You agree to indemnify and hold the Foundation, the

trademark owner, any agent or employee of the Foundation, anyone

providing copies of Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works in accordance

with this agreement, and any volunteers associated with the production,

promotion and distribution of Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works,

harmless from all liability, costs and expenses, including legal fees,

that arise directly or indirectly from any of the following which you do

or cause to occur: (a) distribution of this or any Project Gutenberg-tm

work, (b) alteration, modification, or additions or deletions to any

Project Gutenberg-tm work, and (c) any Defect you cause.

Section 2. Information about the Mission of Project Gutenberg-tm

Project Gutenberg-tm is synonymous with the free distribution of

electronic works in formats readable by the widest variety of computers

including obsolete, old, middle-aged and new computers. It exists

because of the efforts of hundreds of volunteers and donations from

people in all walks of life.

Volunteers and financial support to provide volunteers with the

assistance they need, is critical to reaching Project Gutenberg-tm's

goals and ensuring that the Project Gutenberg-tm collection will

remain freely available for generations to come. In 2001, the Project

Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation was created to provide a secure

and permanent future for Project Gutenberg-tm and future generations.

To learn more about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation

and how your efforts and donations can help, see Sections 3 and 4

and the Foundation web page at http://www.pglaf.org.

Section 3. Information about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive

Foundation

The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation is a non profit

501(c)(3) educational corporation organized under the laws of the

state of Mississippi and granted tax exempt status by the Internal

Revenue Service. The Foundation's EIN or federal tax identification

number is 64-6221541. Its 501(c)(3) letter is posted at

http://pglaf.org/fundraising. Contributions to the Project Gutenberg

Literary Archive Foundation are tax deductible to the full extent

permitted by U.S. federal laws and your state's laws.

The Foundation's principal office is located at 4557 Melan Dr. S.

Fairbanks, AK, 99712., but its volunteers and employees are scattered

throughout numerous locations. Its business office is located at

809 North 1500 West, Salt Lake City, UT 84116, (801) 596-1887, email

business@pglaf.org. Email contact links and up to date contact

information can be found at the Foundation's web site and official

page at http://pglaf.org

For additional contact information:

Dr. Gregory B. Newby

Chief Executive and Director

gbnewby@pglaf.org

Section 4. Information about Donations to the Project Gutenberg

Literary Archive Foundation

Project Gutenberg-tm depends upon and cannot survive without wide

spread public support and donations to carry out its mission of

increasing the number of public domain and licensed works that can be

freely distributed in machine readable form accessible by the widest

array of equipment including outdated equipment. Many small donations

($1 to $5,000) are particularly important to maintaining tax exempt

status with the IRS.

The Foundation is committed to complying with the laws regulating

charities and charitable donations in all 50 states of the United

States. Compliance requirements are not uniform and it takes a

considerable effort, much paperwork and many fees to meet and keep up

with these requirements. We do not solicit donations in locations

where we have not received written confirmation of compliance. To

SEND DONATIONS or determine the status of compliance for any

particular state visit http://pglaf.org

While we cannot and do not solicit contributions from states where we

have not met the solicitation requirements, we know of no prohibition

against accepting unsolicited donations from donors in such states who

approach us with offers to donate.

International donations are gratefully accepted, but we cannot make

any statements concerning tax treatment of donations received from

outside the United States. U.S. laws alone swamp our small staff.

Please check the Project Gutenberg Web pages for current donation

methods and addresses. Donations are accepted in a number of other

ways including checks, online payments and credit card

donations. To donate, please visit: http://pglaf.org/donate

Section 5. General Information About Project Gutenberg-tm electronic

works.

Professor Michael S. Hart is the originator of the Project Gutenberg-tm

concept of a library of electronic works that could be freely shared

with anyone. For thirty years, he produced and distributed Project

Gutenberg-tm eBooks with only a loose network of volunteer support.

Project Gutenberg-tm eBooks are often created from several printed

editions, all of which are confirmed as Public Domain in the U.S.

unless a copyright notice is included. Thus, we do not necessarily

keep eBooks in compliance with any particular paper edition.

Most people start at our Web site which has the main PG search facility:

http://www.gutenberg.org

This Web site includes information about Project Gutenberg-tm,

including how to make donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary

Archive Foundation, how to help produce our new eBooks, and how to

subscribe to our email newsletter to hear about new eBooks.

\*\*\* END: FULL LICENSE \*\*\*